CONSERVATION IN MONSOON ASIA

The Conservation of Immovable Cultural Property in Southeast Asia

JOHN RUSSELL

Dip.Arch M.Sc ARIAS RIBA
ICCRDM (Rome Centre) Certificate in Conservation
Associate International Institute
for Conservation
Fellow Royal Asiatic Society

Thesis submitted to the University, Edinburgh for
the Degree of Master of Technology in Architecture, Research Centre of Architecture, College of Architecture, College of Art, University of Edinburgh.

EDINBURGH COLLEGE OF ART
ARCHITECTURE LIBRARY

September 1978
IV NATIONAL PROFILES (CONT.)

8. Thailand
   Monsoon Asian Setting 393
   Historical Background 398
   Cultural Heritage 401
   Causes of Decay 410
   Conservation Policy and Programmes 421
   Conservation Framework 430

9. Socialist Republic of Vietnam
   Monsoon Asian Setting 441
   Historical Background 446
   Cultural Heritage 450
   Causes of Decay 456
   Conservation Policy and Programmes 468
   Conservation Framework 475

V APPENDICES

1. General 490
2. Conservation Framework I: National 500
3. Conservation Framework II: International 512
4. UNESCO Conventions 518
5. Charter Documents 558
6. Meetings of Experts 568

Glossary 597
Bibliography 600
1. MONSOON ASIAN SETTING

1. KEY FACTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>514,000 sq. km.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital City</td>
<td>Bangkok (pop. 3.97 million).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Use</td>
<td>37% cultivated, 53% forest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population</td>
<td>44 million (56% below 21).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth Rate</td>
<td>2.7% per annum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>86 per sq. km.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life Expectancy</td>
<td>58 years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System of Government</td>
<td>Constitutional Monarchy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. PHYSICAL SETTING

Situation
Thailand, formerly known as Siam, is situated between latitudes 5° 45' N and 20° 30' N. The capital city, Bangkok (pop. 3.97 million), is situated at latitude 13° 45' N. The total land area of the country is 514,000 sq. km., and it is bounded by Burma (northwest), Laos (northeast), the Gulf of Siam (south), the Indian Ocean (west), and West Malaysia (south).

Geology, Relief and Drainage

Geologically, the highlands of northern, western and peninsular Thailand form part of the Indo-Leyayan mountain system which runs through South-east Asia. The higher ranges of the Western Mountains mostly consist of granites and limestones, with isolated areas of shales and schists. The eroded ranges of northern Thailand consist of limestones, shales, schists and sandstones of varying ages. The Khorat Plateau consists of Triassic red sandstone overlaid with deposits of alluvium, clay, sand and gravel. To the southwest of the Plateau is a range of high granite hills. The central basin of Thailand consists of sedimentary rocks overlaid with alluvium and occasional areas of limestone.

In terms of its general physical structure, Thailand resembles Burma, comprising a great alluvial lowland basin, drained by the Menam Chao Praya, surrounded on all sides by highlands. The mountain ranges of the north and west, which correspond to the Arakan Yomas of western Burma, seldom rise to more than 1,200 m., but intense erosion has produced a rugged mountainous landscape. The low-lying (150 m.), saucer-shaped Khorat Plateau of eastern Thailand covers approximately 155,000 sq. km. and is unique in Southeast Asia. To the south of the Plateau lie the Cardamom or Chanthaburi Hills, which extend southeastwards into Khampouchea. The central basin of Thailand lies mostly below 90 m. and is subject to seasonal flooding. The area is drained by the Chao Praya and its tributary the Menam. In the south lies the lowland panhandle region of the Kra Peninsula.

Soils

Rich, heavy alluvial clay soils cover the central basin. In the north soils are lighter though fertile, but the soils of the Khorat Plateau are sandy, thin and porous.
Climate

Thailand has a tropical monsoon type of climate modified by relief. There are three distinct seasons: Northeast Monsoon (October–February), which is the mildest part of the year with clear skies and little rain; Southwest Monsoon (May–September), which bring overcast skies and heavy rain; and the Summer, 'inter-Monsoon', period (March–April), which is dry and extremely hot. The exception to this general pattern is the Kra Peninsula, which has rain all the year round and has an equatorial type of climate. Average daily temperatures exceed 25°C all the year round, varying locally from 15.6°C in the north to 26.5°C in the south in January. Mean annual precipitation varies according to relief from less than 1,000 mm. to more than 2,000 mm. Mean annual precipitation in inland lowland areas average 1,250 mm., but during the dry season, there is often a period of drought and evaporation is high. Central and southern lowland areas are frost-free all the year round.

Earthquake and Volcanic Activity

Thailand lies in a low frequency earthquake zone being outwith the 'trans Asiatic' seismic zone. There are no active volcanoes in the country.

Vegetation

The natural vegetation of the northern highlands of Thailand is similar to that of Burma comprising equatorial and tropical rain forest. In drier areas, this gives way to semi-deciduous forest below 1,000 m. and coniferous forest above 1,000 m. In the former, tropical hardwoods like teak and yang predominate. In the latter, Rhododendrons are common. In central areas, dry deciduous forest predominates and forest fires are common during the dry season. Bamboo is widespread. In the south, there are extensive areas of mangrove sea swamp forest along the margins of the Gulf of Siam and the Andaman Sea which are exploited by Thai charcoal burners. Much of the original vegetational cover of central Thailand and the valleys of northern Thailand have been cleared for plantation crops such as rubber, tobacco, maize, opium, sugar cane and coconuts. Rice is widely planted.

Land Use

More than half the land area of Thailand (53%) is forested.
Population

The population of Thailand is approximately 44 million and comprises Thais (90%), Chinese (2%), Laos, Vietnamese, Khmers, Malays and others (8%). The average population density is 86 per sq. km. Local densities vary considerably, however, from as few as 4 per sq. km. in the northern highlands to over 400 per sq. km. in the low-lying central basin of the Menam Chao Praya. The eastern part of the Khorat Plateau has an average population density of about 120 per sq. km. In general, the regional distribution of population reflects racial grouping: Thais (central lowlands), Laos (Khorat Plateau), Khmers and Vietnamese (southeast lowlands), and Malays (Kra Peninsula). The Chinese community is concentrated in urban areas - mainly Bangkok.

FIG.189 THAILAND - ESTIMATES OF URBAN AND RURAL POPULATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Urban</th>
<th>Rural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>3,296</td>
<td>23,096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1965</td>
<td>4,128</td>
<td>26,562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>5,351</td>
<td>30,810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>6,842</td>
<td>35,708</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>8,636 ('000)</td>
<td>41,811 ('000)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More than three-quarters of all Thais live in the 46,000 villages situated in the midst of the rice growing areas of the Menam Chao Praya Valley and the Khorat Plateau. Of the seven million urban dwellers, four million live in the Bangkok Metropolitan Area. Other urban concentrations of more than one million are Khon Kaen, Chiang Rai and Chiang Mai.

Language

The official language of Thailand is Thai. Chinese and English are widely spoken in urban areas. Lao, Khmer, Vietnamese and Malay are also spoken. The literacy rate of the population is more than seventy per cent.

Religion

The majority of the population practise Buddhism (94%). The remainder practise Islam (4%), Confucianism, Taoism, Hinduism, Animism and Christian beliefs (2%).
Cultural Tourism

Bangkok is the principal centre of cultural tourism in Thailand and is well placed for excursions to such historic sites as Lopburi and Ayuthia. However, the concentration of tourism in the Bangkok area has been to the detriment of more remote monuments and sites at such centres as Sukhothai, Kamphaeng Phet, Chiangmai and Pitsanulok. Because of the prevailing military situation in northeast Thailand, cultural tourism is negligible. Tourist projects such as the 'Ancient City', an 80 ha. open air museum containing sixty-six monuments from all over Thailand, situated 33 km. southeast of Bangkok on the old Sukhumvit Highway, are unlikely to encourage cultural tourism outwith the boundaries of Samut Prakarn Province.

FIG. 194 THAILAND - TOURISTS AND TOURIST RECEIPTS (1969-72)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tourists</td>
<td>499.8</td>
<td>531.1</td>
<td>592.5</td>
<td>329.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receipts</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. POLITICAL SETTING

Constitution and Government

Until 24 June 1932, Siam was an absolute monarchy, but on that date a bloodless coup was effected and a Provisional Constitution Act was promulgated three days later. The Constitution of 10 December 1932 established a constitutional monarchy, and from that date until 14 October 1973, Thailand was ruled by a military government. A civilian government ruled the country until 6 October 1976, when the coalition government of Seni Pramoj was toppled by a second military coup led by General Kriangsak Chamanand.

International Relations

Thailand is a member of the United Nations (U.N.), and its sister agencies UNESCO, IAEA, ILO, FAO, WHO, ICAO, UIU, UNO, IFC, IMCO, and the Bank and Fund. She is also a member of the Association of South East Asian Nations (ASEAN), and the Colombo Plan.
2. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

1. EARLY HISTORY

At the beginning of the Christian era, the greater part of the lower valley of the Menam River was occupied by the Mon-Khmers (a group of peoples closely related to the Tailings or Western Mons of southern Burma). In the sixth century A.D., these peoples came together to form the Mon Confederation from which the southern Kingdom of Dvaravati (c.6-11th century A.D.) subsequently arose. The capital of Dvaravati is thought to have been either Nakhon Pathom or Lopburi. Initially Dvaravati was suzerain to the Empire of Fu-nan (c.1st century-627 A.D.) and strongly influenced by the Hindu dynasties of Gupta (320-600 A.D.) and Pallava (600-750 A.D.), but later it came under the influence of the Buddhist, Sumatran Kingdom of Sri Vijaya (670-1350 A.D.). The end of Dvaravati came in the tenth century A.D. with the establishment of the Khmer Viceroyalty at Lopburi (Sano).

Meanwhile in the mountainous northern region of the country, the Sino-Tibetan Lao-Thais of the Yunnan Plateau in south-western China had begun to migrate westwards and southwards along the margins of the Salween and the Mekong as early as the sixth century. The first Thai capital was established at Lamphun (Lampang) in c.575 A.D. Later, as Thai authority increased in the area, other capitals were established further southwards at Sukhothai, Sawankalok and Pitsanulok. In the mid-thirteenth century, following the capture of the Thai settlement of Nan-Chao in Yunnan by Kublai Khan (1216-94 A.D.) and the creation of a puppet administration in 1253 A.D., a second wave of Thai migrants began to move into Thai dominated areas of what is today northern Thailand. In 1287 A.D. Kublai Khan defeated the Burmese at Yochan and overran and sacked the capital at Pagan. In the same year, the three most powerful Thai chieftains, in alliance with the Mongol-controlled, former Thai state of Nan-Chao, defeated the Khmers at Chiangmai and established the first Thai dynasty of Lan-Na. In 1293 A.D. King Rama Khamheng succeeded to the throne of the suzerain Kingdom of Sukhothai and three years later the Khmers were forced to withdraw across the Mekong. Sukhothai was itself absorbed into the Kingdom of Ayuthia (1350-1767 A.D.) in 1350 A.D. The capital of Ayuthia was Lopburi (Sano), the former seat of the Khmer Viceroyalty of southern Menam, and its foundation is generally regarded as marking the beginning of an independent Thai cultural tradition and the commencement of Thai history proper.
Early History (cont.)

Following the consolidation of Thai authority in the north at Chiangmai and in the south at Ayuthia, the Thais rapidly extended their authority to include Laos, Cambodia, southern Burma and the greater part of the Malay Peninsula. The Strait of Malacca was reached by the Thais in c.1400 A.D., and in 1431 A.D. the Khmer capital at Angkor was overrun and sacked. In c.1450, the Lan-Na King Tiloka (1441-81 A.D.) invited Singhalese monks from Anuradhapura in Ceylon to teach the word of the Buddha at Chiangmai, and thereafter Siam, which had been subject to both Brahman and Mahayana Buddhist influences, became the centre of Hinayana Buddhism. However, in the late fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, the southern Kingdom of Ayuthia began to suffer a series of setbacks beginning with their expulsion from the Malay Peninsula by the Kingdom of Malacca (1402-1511 A.D.) in alliance with the Chinese, and a series of battles with the Burmese, led by King Bayinnaung, between 1549 and 1559 A.D., that reduced the Thais to the status of a tributary state in 1578 A.D. Independence was re-established by King Naresuan in 1593 A.D., but a century and a half later the Burmese again attacked and the capital of Ayuthia was sacked in 1767 A.D. The Thais were forced to withdraw southwards to Thonburi on the right bank of the Menam Chao Praya.

2. Modern History

Alone among the countries of Southeast Asia, Siam was never colonised by the European powers, although its history of contact with them dates back to the sixteenth century. The Portuguese were the first to establish trading relations in 1521 A.D., the British and the Dutch following in their footsteps a century later, but whereas elsewhere in the region trade inevitably led to political denomination, in Siam it led to its being declared a neutral state between the British and French spheres of influence in the Indian Sub-Continent and Indo-China respectively.

The third Thai Kingdom of Thonburi (1782-present day) was founded in 1782 A.D. by King Rama I (1782-1809 A.D.) at Bangkok, on the opposite bank of the Menam Chao Praya to Thonburi, in 1782 A.D. Rama I was also the founder of the present Chakri Dynasty from which two monarchs must be singled out for attention because of their roles in maintaining the independence of Siam. The first is King Mongut Rama IV (1851-68 A.D.), who introduced legislative, administrative and social reforms into the country, and his son, King Chulalongkorn (1868-1910 A.D.), who provided
the country with a modern infrastructure of railways and roads. In consequence of these innovations Siam's subsequent economic growth was more rapid and less painful than that of her neighbours.

In general, Siam's relations with the British were good. The first Anglo-Siamese Treaty of 1826 provided for trade and commerce between the two countries and this was reinforced by the second Anglo-Siamese Treaty of 1855. A dispute over the line of the Burma-Siam boundary was settled amicably in 1868. Relations with the French remained poor, however, and deteriorated rapidly towards the end of the nineteenth century, when the Siamese refusal to recognise the claim of the French to all territory east of the Mekong led to the blockading of Bangkok in 1893. The intense rivalry between the British and the French in the region resulted in the signing of the Anglo-French Agreement of 1896, under the provisions of which both nations agreed not to occupy or permit any other nation to occupy the central portion of Siam. Each also recognised the right of the other to include the regions to the east and west of the Menam within their relative spheres of influence. Territory was ceded to France in 1904 and 1907, and to Britain in 1909 (under the provisions of the third Anglo-Siamese Treaty of 1909), and as a 'buffer' state between Burma and Cambodia, Siam adopted a neutral policy and continued to prosper and develop. The reforms introduced during Chulalongkorn's reign met with some resistance, however, and after his death in 1910 widespread rioting broke out, and it was not until 1912 that order was fully restored.

On 24 June 1932, a bloodless coup ended the absolute monarchy and power passed into the hands of the Army. Seven years later to the day, the name of the country was changed from Siam to Thailand. From 1938 until 1957 (except for a period of chaotic civilian rule from 1945 to 1948, during which the territories, 'recovered' from the French in Cambodia and Laos in 1941 with Japanese support, were ceded to Burma, Laos, Malaya and Cambodia) Thailand was governed by Field Marshal Pibun Songkhram. His successor, Field Marshal Sarit Thanarat governed Thailand from 1957 to 1963, and was in turn succeeded by Field Marshal Thanom Kittikachorn. Thanom was forced to flee in 1974 following student demonstrations in Bangkok, and for the next two years Thailand was governed by a series of civilian coalition governments. Military government was re-established by General Kriangsak Chamanand on 6 October 1976.
3. CULTURAL HERITAGE

1. ARCHAEOLOGICAL

Prehistoric Sites

Because of recent discoveries at a number of sites in the remote north-eastern provinces of Udon Thani and Sakon Nakon, the prehistory of Thailand and Southeast Asia is having to be radically reappraised, and an area that has long been thought of as a cultural backwater is now believed to have once been the centre of a vibrant cultural tradition inhabited by a people who had mastered the techniques of metallurgy and rice culture by 3,500 B.C.1 Bronze artifacts unearthed at Nong Nok Tha, a three hectare site located one hundred kilometres north-east of Saraburi, have been dated to c.2,300-3,000 B.C. placing them five hundred years earlier than the oldest-known examples of bronze casting in India, and one thousand years before the oldest known examples in China. Buff-coloured, clay pottery, decorated with circular red patterns, has been unearthed at Ban Chiang and dated to c.3,000-6,000 B.C. by thermo-luminescence and Carbon-14 dating techniques. Similar pottery unearthed at a site near Udon Thani has been dated to c.4,700 B.C.2 Regrettably, news of the discovery resulted in the widespread despoilation of sites in the two provinces by local villagers seeking to supplement their meagre income by indulging in a little 'treasure-hunting' and it was not until 1972 that the Thai Government acted to protect the sites by prohibiting the excavation and trafficking in the so-called 'Ban Chiang ware'.3 Consequently, many thousands of pots were unearthed and sold to dealers and collectors before a joint Thai-American archaeological team moved in to excavate the sites scientifically in 1973.4

Proto-historic Sites

During the fourth and fifth centuries A.D., Thailand came under Indian influence, and a number of important finds have been made dating from that period at numerous sites, the most important of which is a Roman bronze lamp unearthed at Pong Tuk in Kanchanaburi province. A bronze

---

4. Of the 155 prehistoric sites discovered in Thailand up until 1972, only 11 have been scientifically excavated according to figures published by the Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok.
Proto-historic Sites (cont.)

Buddha image of the Gupta period (c.320-600 A.D.) was also found at the site. Similar finds have been made at sites in the provinces of Nakhon Ratchasima and Surat Thani.1

2. ARCHITECTURAL

Thailand is situated at the very heart of Southeast Asia, and since the beginnings of the Christian era it has been the 'melting-pot' of various civilisations. This is reflected in the diversity of monuments and sites surviving in the country, which illustrate the influence of a number of civilisations in an uninterrupted sequence over the last two thousand years. Seven distinct periods are generally recognised in the development of the art and architecture of Thailand:

1. Dvaravati Period : 6-11th century A.D.
2. Srivijaya Period : 9-13th century A.D.
3. Lopburi Period : 11-13th century A.D.
4. Chieng Saen Period : 11-13th century A.D.
5. Sukhothai Period : 13th century A.D.
6. Ayuthaya Period : 14-18th century A.D.

Dvaravati Period

The Kingdom of Dvaravati flourished for six hundred years at Lamphun, Nakhon Pathom, U-Thong and Ratchaburi, but few monuments have survived to the present day. Examples of note include: a) Wat Kukut or Chamtewi at Lamphun; and b) Wat Phra Paton and Wat Phra Men at Nakhon Pathom.2

Srivijaya Period

The Kingdom of Srivijaya (670-1350 A.D.) rose to power in the south, at Palembang in Sumatra, and at the height of its influence it exercised authority over the Malay Peninsula and some parts of southern Thailand. Few monuments have survived to the present day. Examples of note include Phra That Chaiya and Wat Kaew at Chaiya.3

Lopburi Period

During the 11-13th centuries A.D., Lopburi was the seat of the Khmer Viceroyalty in Thailand, and the surviving monuments of the period are similar to those at Angkor in neighbouring Khampouchea. Examples of note include: a) Wat Maha That, Wat Nakhon Kosa and Prang Sam Yot at Lopburi; b) Wat Phimai at Khorat; and c) Ban Ra Ngaeng at Surin.1

Chieng Saen Period

Uncertainty surrounds the foundation of the Kingdom of Chieng Saen in northern Thailand, which is generally considered to mark the establishment of the first true Thai culture. The few surviving monuments at Chieng Saen date mainly from the reign of King Mengrai, who founded the northern capital of Chiang Mai in 1296 A.D. Examples of note include: a) Wat Pa Sak at Chieng Saen; and b) Wat Chet Yot at Chiang Mai.2

Sukhothai Period

The establishment of the Kingdom of Sukhothai as an independent state in the late thirteenth century, following the overthrow of the Khmers at Chiang Mai in 1287 A.D., is generally considered to mark the foundation of the 'golden age' of art and architecture in Thailand. Of the monuments surviving from the period, most are little more than ruins. Examples of note include: a) Wat Maha That at Sukhothai; b) Wat Phra Si Ratana Maha That and Wat Phra Attarot at Pitsanulok; and c) Wat Chedi Chet Thaew, Wat Khao Yai and Wat Phra Si Ratana Maha That Chalai at Si Satchanalai.3

Ayutthaya Period

During the five hundred year lifespan of the Kingdom of Ayutthaya, the art and architecture of Lopburi, Sukhothai and Angkor was further developed and wall painting makes its appearance in Thailand for the first time. The period is rightly considered to be the 'golden age' of Thai art and architecture. Four phases are generally recognised:

1. From the founding of Ayutthaya by King U-Thong in c.1350 A.D. until the end of King Boromtrailokanat's reign in 1488 A.D.;

Ayutthaya Period (cont.)

2. From the beginning of King Boromtrailokanat's rule at Pitsanulok in 1463 A.D. until the end of King Song Tham's reign in 1628 A.D.;

3. From the reign of King Prasat Thong in 1630 A.D. until the end of King Thai Sa's reign in 1732 A.D.; and

4. From the reign of King Boromkot in 1732 A.D. until the destruction of Ayutthaya in 1767 A.D.

The first phase reflects the influence of Lopburi more than Sukhothai. Examples of note include: a) Wat Phutthaisawan, Wat Phra Ram, Wat Phra Maha That and Wat Ratchaburana at Ayutthaya; and b) Wat Phra Si Ratana Maha That at Phitsanulok. The second phase reflects the influence of Sukhothai. Examples of note include Wat Phra Si Sanphet and Wat Yai Chaimongkhon at Ayutthaya. The third phase reflects the influence of Angkor. Examples of note include a) Wat Chaiwattanaram at Ayutthaya; and b) Wat Chumphonnikayaram at Bang Pa-in. The fourth and last phase is one of stability, during which many monuments were restored by King Boromkot. Examples of note include the Wat Phuhaothong and Si Suriyothai Chedi at Ayutthaya.

Bangkok Period

The establishment of the new capital at Bangkok marked the beginning of the 'modern period' in Thailand, during which European influence steadily increased, and the end of substantial artistic and architectural development. The period is characterised by the reinterpretation of earlier styles in a highly ornate manner, and the introduction of Chinese and European styles. Wall paintings, which reflect the influence of Ayutthaya at first, later reflect European influence. Many examples survive from the period, of which the following are of note: Wat Rakhang, Si Sanphet Chedi, Wat Phra Chetupon (Wat Pho), Wat Arun (Temple of the Dawn), Wat Bowonnivet, Temple of the Emerald Buddha, Wat Ratcha-orot, Wat Ratchanadda, Wat Ratbopit and Wat Benchamabopit at Bangkok. Outwith Bangkok, the Summer Palace and Chinese Pavilion at Bang Pa-in are outstanding examples of the period.

Building Types

The building types of Thailand are few in number but diverse in character, reflecting Indian, Singhalese, Khmer, Burmese, Chinese and European influences. The overwhelming majority of surviving monuments and sites are of religious significance (Wats, Chedis, Mondops, Viharas, Koos, Prangs and ancillary structures) because of the Buddhist tradition of lavishing surplus wealth upon the construction, maintenance and restoration of religious structures in order to gain merit in accordance with the Buddhist canon. Secular structures, including palaces, were more usually constructed of timber before the Bangkok period and were in consequence, less durable.

a) Ruined cities and fortifications

The two principal ruined cities of Thailand are Sukhothai and Ayutthaya (known also as Ayudhya and Ayuthia). Sukhothai is situated fifty-eight kilometres north-west of Phitsanulok. The fortifications, which comprise three rectangular, concentric banks of earth separated by moats (now drained), measure 1,810 m by 1,400 m. There are only four gates. Within the fortifications there are the ruins of twenty-one monasteries and ancillary structures and four tanks (reservoirs). Another seventy monuments and sites lie within five kilometres of the ruined city.1 Ayutthaya is situated seventy-two kilometres north of Bangkok at the confluence of the Pa Sak, the Lop Buri and the Chao Phya. Originally, the fortifications at Ayutthaya were constructed of earth and surrounded with a timber palisade. Later, in 1549 A.D., they were rebuilt in brick and faced with plaster. A second brick wall and six fortresses were added in 1580 A.D., five of which were subsequently dismantled and their bricks used for the construction of Bangkok's city walls. Within the fortifications there are the remains of three palaces, twenty-nine fortifications, ninety-four city gates and three hundred and seventy-five monasteries.2 Other ruined cities of note include Khai Nern Wong and Kan Kra Buri, both of which are situated in Chantaburi province, near to the border with Khampouchea, two hundred and fifty kilometres south-east of Bangkok. The fortifications of both ruined cities are constructed of laterite.3

3. Noor, B. 'Cultural ties may have been forged in India', in The Bangkok Post, September/October, 1972.
Building Types (cont.)

b) Wats (Monasteries)

The term 'Wat' is given to the collection of structures that comprise a monastery. The principal structures concerned are: the 'Chedi' or 'Chetiya'; the 'Bot' or 'Ubosot'; and the 'Vihara' or 'Wihan'.

c) Chedis or Chetiyas (Stupas)

Chedis or Chetiyas (stupas) are intended to house relics or objects associated with the Buddha, or to commemorate sites sacred to his memory. There are five principal types:

1. The 'lotus-bud' or 'Sukhothai' type;
2. The 'bell-shaped' or 'Singhalese' type;
3. The 'mixed Singhalese' or 'Srivijaya' type;
4. The 'mixed Singhalese/Khmer' or 'Prang' type; and
5. The 'mondop' or 'stupa/shrine' type.

The lotus-bud type of stupa is peculiar to Sukhothai and comprises a three-storeyed, stepped platform base, either square or rectangular on plan, surmounted by a tall, tapering tower topped by a plantain or lotus bud-shaped finial. Examples of the type include: a) Wat Maha That at Sukhothai; and b) Wat Chedi Chet Thaew at Si Satchanalai.

The bell-shaped or Singhalese type of stupa is more widespread. It comprises a three-storeyed, stepped platform base, square on plan, surmounted by a bell-shaped dome topped by a tapering, cone-shaped pinnacle which springs from a small square base. Examples of the type include: Wat Trakuan at Sukhothai; and b) Wat Phra Si Sanphet at Ayuthia.

The mixed Singhalese or Srivijaya type of stupa is a Thai variant of the stupa/shrine type of stupa of northern India, Burma and Nepal. It comprises a tall, single-storeyed platform base, square on plan, with four niches containing Buddha images. This is surmounted by a bell-shaped dome of the Singhalese type as previously described. More ornate examples have elephants set in niches all around the perimeter of the base. Examples of the type include the chedis at Wat Chang Rop and Wat Chang Lom at Sukhothai.
Building Types (cont.)

The mixed Singhalese/Khmer or prang type of stupa comprises either a single or multi-storeyed platform base, square or rectangular on plan, surmounted by a bell-shaped dome of the Singhalese type topped by a tall, parallel-sided tower of Khmer origin, known as a 'prang'. Examples of the type include: a) Wat Phra Si Ratana Maha That Chaliang at Satchanalai; and b) Wat Chaiwathanaram and Wat Phutthaisawan at Ayutthaya.

The mondop or stupa/shrine type of stupa is a variation of the mixed Singhalese or Srivijaya type of stupa previously described, but the bell-shaped dome is greatly depressed and the platform base is enlarged to accommodate a Buddha image. An example of the type is Wat Chetupon at Sukhothai.

Laterite and baked brick, laid in lime mortar and rendered with lime stucco, composed of lime, sand, sugarcane juice or syrup, and animal hide, are the principal building materials used in the construction of these structures. Later examples of the Bangkok period are lavishly ornamented with gilding, glass and mirror mosaic, and glazed, polychrome tiles, known locally as 'Sangkalok'.

d) Bots or Ubosots (Temple Buildings or Shrines)

The bot or ubosot is the main temple building or shrine. Rectangular on plan, these lofty, single-cell structures are generally sub-divided by a double row of timber or baked brick columns, to form a central nave and two side aisles. The columns, which are usually of massive proportions, support the main beams of the sweeping, high-gabled triple roof. The walls of the cell are also massive and are battered on their outer surface. The interior of the cell is generally covered with wall paintings, executed in tempera on a lime plaster ground, illustrating scenes of the Buddha's life and the Jatakas. The ceiling and beams are painted vermillion and ornamented with gold-leaf on a black ground. A single or group of Buddha images is placed on a raised platform at the west end of the cell. However, few bronze images have survived in situ and the majority are constructed of lime stucco and timber. There are normally six doors in the cell, three facing and three behind the Buddha image or images. Windows are ranged along the long walls only. Both doors and windows are narrower at the top than the bottom, and have ornately-carved, teak surrounds. The traditional Thai triple-roof
Building Types (cont.)

has high, ornately-carved gables terminated by flamboyant finials, long, tiled, stepped roof pitches of increasingly-steep pitch, overhanging eaves and upward-curving ridges. Porticos are similarly roofed with a triple roof of smaller section. Because of the organic nature of the materials used in the construction of the roof, few original examples have survived from before the nineteenth century. The majority are situated at Bangkok. Notable examples include: Wat Phra Keo (Temple of the Emerald Buddha), Buddhaisawan Chapel and Wat Po.

e) Viharas or Wihans (Ordination and Assembly Halls)

Architecturally, viharas or wihans are similar to bots or Ubosots. They are, however, smaller and are used for general purposes, such as religious feasts and ceremonies, and other public assemblages.

f) Koos (Pavilions)

Koos are small, open-sided pavilions sheltering Buddha images.

g) Mondops (Image Houses)

Mondops are single-cell structures housing a Buddha image. They comprise a single storey platform base, rectangular on plan, surmounted by a small shrine with a projecting portico. The entrance is reached by a flight of stairs. Numerous examples are found at Sukhothai.

h) Colossal Buddha Images

Colossal Buddha images are widespread in Thailand. There are four postures: sitting, reclining, standing and walking. Both stone and baked brick faced with lime stucco are used in their fabrication. Colossal bronze images are comparatively rare. Examples of note include: the 28 m reclining Buddha at Wat Loyaka-sudha, Ayutthia; the 12.5 m standing Buddha at Wat Khao Saphan Hin and walking Buddha at Wat Phra Chetuphon, Sukhothai; and the sitting Buddha at Wat Suthat, Bangkok, which measures 6.25 m from knee to knee.
Prangs (Towers)

Prangs are towers of Khmer origin. The first examples appear during the Lopburi period and are modelled on those at Angkor. Later, however, the form of the prang becomes elongated and ornately modelled and wholly Thai in character. Constructed of both stone and baked brick faced with lime stucco, they are found in association with chedis, bots, viharas and mondops.

Royal Palaces and Ancillary Structures

The builders of Thailand's royal palaces, audience halls, pavilions, villas and other structures, are the Chakri Dynasty (1782- ) of which King Bhumibol Adulyadej (Rama IX) is the present Head of State. The foremost group of royal residences is the Grand Palace at Bangkok, built by the founder of the Dynasty, King Rama I, in 1782-83 A.D. It comprises the following three principal sections:

1. The Front Court - Ministry of Finance, Sala Lukkhun, Comptroller-General's Office (former Foreign Office), Treasury and Sala Sahadaya (former Concordia Hall);
2. The Chapel Royal of the Emerald Buddha (Wat Phra Keo); and
3. The Inner Court - Dusit Maha Prasat (Audience Hall), Chakri Residence, The Mahamontien (Great Residence), Sivalaya Gardens (Chapel of the Crystal Buddha, Sivalayaprasad Pavilion and Mahisraprasad Shrine).

The whole complex is set within a walled enclosure, access to which is controlled via eight gateways.

At Bang Pa-in, a small island in the Chao Phya River, fifty-eight kilometres north of Bangkok, the first royal palace was not begun until the reign of King Chulalongkorn in 1872 A.D. It was completed four years later, in 1876 A.D., and thereafter a series of uniquely idiosyncratic structures were added. The so-called 'Summer Palace' is modelled on Versailles, and is ornately decorated with imported marble facing slabs. In contrast, the Vehat Chamrun Hall is built in the Chinese style.

Fig. 195  Thailand - Principal Historic Sites (1 : 7.5 million).
Bangkok Area

1. Grand Palace, Bangkok
2. Wat Phra Keo (Temple of the Emerald Buddha), Bangkok
3. Wat Phra Chetupon, Bangkok
4. Wat Arun (Temple of Dawn), Bangkok
5. Wat Po (50 m. Reclining Buddha), Bangkok
6. Marble Temple, Bangkok
7. Buddhaisawan Chapel, Bangkok
8. Wat Dusidaram, Thonburi
9. Wat Suwannaram, Thonburi

U-Thong Area

1. Phra Pathom Chedi, Nakorn Pathom
2. Chulia Prathon, Nakorn Pathom
3. Chedi Nos. 1-13, Suphanburi
4. Site of Koo-Bua City, Ratchaburi
5. Wat Kloeng, Ratchaburi
6. Chedi Nos. 1-8, Ratchaburi
7. Wat Maha That, Ratchaburi
8. Wat T'ai Suwannaram, Phetchaburi
9. Wat Ko Kaew Sutharam, Phetchaburi

North East Area

1. Wat Na Phra That, Nakhon Ratcha Si, Korat
2. Wat Panom Van, Tambol Ban Bodhi
3. Site of Pimai City, Pimai
4. Temple Compound, Pimai
5. Phanom Rung, Buriram

North Area

1. Wat Chiang Mun, Chiang Mai
2. Wat Chedi Luang, Chiang Mai
3. Wat Phra Singh, Chiang Mai
4. Wat Jettyod, Chiang Mai
5. Wat Doy Suthep, Chiang Mai
6. Wat Umong Thera Chandra, Chiang Mai
7. Wat Prasat, Chiang Mai
8. Wat Phra That Hari-punjei, Lampoon
9. Wat Cham Devi (Ku-Kut), Lampoon
10. City Towers, Lampang
11. Wat Phra That Lampang Luang, Lampang
12. Wat Maha That, Sukhothai
13. Wat Sri Sawai, Sukhothai
14. Wat Chedi Chet Thaew, Sukhothai
15. Wat Phra That Luang, Sukhothai
16. Wat Sri Chum, Sukhothai
17. Wat Traphang Thong Lang, Sukhothai
18. Wat Si Sawai, Sukhothai
19. Prasat Mound, Sukhothai
20. Lak Muang, Sukhothai
21. Wat Chana Songkhram, Sukhothai
22. Wat Mai, Sukhothai
23. Wat Sra Si, Sukhothai
24. Wat Trakuan, Sukhothai
25. Ta Pha Daeng Shrine, Sukhothai
26. Wat Son Khao, Sukhothai
27. Wat Sarasak, Sukhothai
28. Wat Kamphaeng Laeng, Sukhothai
29. Wat Khao San, Sukhothai
30. Wat Mum Muang, Sukhothai
31. San Luang Gate, Sukhothai
32. Nanao Gate, Sukhothai
33. Kamphaeng Nok Gate, Sukhothai
34. Wat Sangkhawat, Sukhothai
35. Wat Si Chum, Sukhothai
36. Wat Om Rop, Sukhothai
37. Turiang Kilns, Sukhothai
38. Wat Khung Wai, Sukhothai
39. Wat Hin Tang, Sukhothai
40. Wat Saphan Hin, Sukhothai
41. Wat Aranyik, Sukhothai
42. Wat Phrabat Noi, Sukhothai
43. Wat Phrabat Yai, Sukhothai
44. Wat Than Hip, Sukhothai
45. Wat Chedi Ngam, Sukhothai
46. Wat Chang Rop, Sukhothai
47. Wat Mangkon, Sukhothai
48. Wat Pa Sak, Sukhothai
49. Ho Devalaya Mahakasetraviman (Palace of the Gods in the Field), Sukhothai
50. Wat Panamwan, Sukhothai
51. Wat Tuk, Sukhothai
52. Wat Si Thon, Sukhothai
53. Wat Chedi Si Hong, Sukhothai
54. Wat Phicit Kitikalayaram, Sukhothai
55. Wat Ton Chan, Sukhothai
56. Wat Kon Leang, Sukhothai
57. Wat Wihan Thong, Sukhothai
58. Wat Phrong Men, Sukhothai
59. Wat Asokaram, Sukhothai
60. Wat Mum Langka, Sukhothai
61. Wat Ya Kron, Sukhothai
62. Wat Chedi Sung, Sukhothai
63. Wat Chedi Yot Hak, Sukhothai
64. Wat Ton Nakham, Sukhothai
65. Wat Traphang Pan, Sukhothai
66. Wat Mae Chon, Sukhothai
67. Phra Baht Yai Hill, Sukhothai
68. Phra Baht Noi Hill, Sukhothai
69. Sao Ho Canel, Sukhothai
70. To Tak, Sukhothai
71. To Sok Phra Ruang, Sukhothai
72. Krat Bang Hill, Sukhothai
73. Wat Chang Lom, Sukhothai
74. Wat Chetupon, Sukhothai
75. Wat Saphan Hin, Sukhothai
76. Wat Traphang Ngoen, Sukhothai
77. Yao Canel, Sukhothai
78. Dam Phra Raung, Sukhothai
79. Wat Arvat Yai, Kumpang Petch
80. Wat Chang Rob, Kumpang Petch
81. Wat Phra Kae, Kumpang Petch
82. Wat Phra Non, Kumpang Petch
83. Wat Phra Si Iriyabote, Kumpang Petch
84. Phet Fort, Kumpang Petch
85. Wat Phra Sri Ratana Maha That, Sri Satchanalai
86. Wat Khao Phnom Phlenng, Sri Satchanalai
87. Wat Khao Suwankiri, Sri Satchanalai
88. Wat Chang Lom, Sri Satchanalai
89. Wat Chedi Chet Thaew, Sri Satchanalai
90. Wat Suan Kaow Uthayan Yai, Sri Satchanalai
91. Wat Nang Phya, Sri Satchanalai
92. Lok Muang, Sri Satchanalai
93. Royal Palace, Sri Satchanalai
94. Wat Suan Kaew Uthayan Noi, Sri Satchanalai
95. Wat Phra Sri Ratana Maha Dhat, Pittsubulok

Central Area

1. Tri Mak Building, Ayuthia
2. Royal Palace site, Ayuthia
3. Wat Phra Sri Sanpets, Ayuthia
4. Wat Samanogoth, Ayuthia
5. Wat Kudhidown, Ayuthia
6. Wat Phanacheung, Ayuthia
7. Wat Choa Phab, Ayuthia
8. Chandara Kasem Palace, Ayuthia
9. Wat Rajburana, Ayuthia
10. Khoom Khun Phaen (Old Governor's House)
11. Elephant Kraal, Ayuthia
12. Wat Maha That, Ayuthia
13. Wat Swannaram, Ayuthia
14. Pavilion of Somdet Phra Buddhakhosacharn, Ayuthia
15. Wat Buddhasawan, Ayuthia
16. Vihan Phra Mongkol Bophit, Ayuthia
17. Khum Khun Phaen, Ayuthia
18. Wat Phra Ram, Ayuthia
19. Wat Khun Muang Chai, Ayuthia
20. Wat Nok, Ayuthia
21. Wat Boromphutharam, Ayuthia
22. Wat Senasanaram, Ayuthia
23. Wat Suan-luang Sopsawan, Ayuthia
24. Wat Lokayasutha, Ayuthia
25. Wat Phulhao Thong, Ayuthia
26. Wat Phutthaisawan, Ayuthia
27. Wat Chaithathanaram, Ayuthia
28. Wat Na Phramen, Ayuthia
29. Wat Yai Chaimongkol, Ayuthia
30. Phra Nakhon Luang Residence, Ayuthia.
Central Area (cont.)

31. Aisawan-thipya-at Building, Bang Pa-in
32. Varophatphiman Hall, Bang Pa-in
33. Uthayan-phumi-sathian Building, Bang Pa-in
34. Vehat Chamrun Hall, Bang Pa-in
35. Vitunthasana Building, Bang Pa-in
36. Wat Chumphol Nikayaram, Bang Pa-in
37. Wat Niwet Thamaprawat, Bang Pa-in
38. Royal Palace complex, Lopburi
39. Old City Gate, Lopburi
40. Wat Yai Intharam, Chonburi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Places</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Palaces</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forts and camps</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Old towns and cities</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historic hamlets</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bridges</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Religious structures</td>
<td>817</td>
<td>79.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone sanctuaries</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caves and hills</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ponds and marshes</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TOTAL</strong></td>
<td><strong>1,033</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 198  Thailand – Ayuthia. Dutch map of the ancient capital illustrating the palaces and temples of the city which was constructed on the bank of the River Menam.
Fig. 199 Thailand - Temple of the Dawn, Thon-buri.
Fig. 200  Thailand - Phra Prang Sam Yot, Lopburi (late 12th-century). Typical provincial Khmer monument.

Fig. 201  Thailand - Vat Chet Yot, Chiangmai. Buddhist shrine modelled on Bodh-gaya, Bihar, India.
Fig. 202  Thailand - Wat Phra Sri, Ayuthia (c. 16th-century). Brick stupas faced with lime stucco in advanced state of decay due to abandonment and encroachment by the jungle.

Fig. 203  Thailand - Reclining Buddha, Wat Loyaka-sudha, Ayuthia (16th-century). Restored by Museums Department.
Fig. 204 Thailand - Reclining Buddha, Wat Loyaka-sudha, Ayuthia (16th-century). Detail of head of 28 m. colossus built of baked brick and faced with lime stucco.
Fig. 205 Thailand – Eighteenth century, Bangkok style, wall painting on the wall of the Buddhaisawan Hall, National Museum, Bangkok.

Fig. 206 Thailand – Detail of painted lacquer cabinet illustrating scenes of court life (mid 19th-century).
4. CAUSES OF DECAY

1. INTRINSIC CAUSES

Location

a) Microclimate, Subsoil Conditions and Drainage

Thailand has a tropical monsoon type of climate modified by relief. There are three distinct seasons: Northeast Monsoon (October-February), Southwest Monsoon (May-September), and the 'inter-Monsoon season' (March-April). Monuments and sites located at lowland sites inland from the Gulf of Siam are subject to light rainfall averaging 1,250 mm per annum and, during the dry 'inter-Monsoon' season, the rate of evaporation often exceeds precipitation and droughts occur. Upland and coastal sites are exposed to rain-bearing winds and precipitation rises to more than 2,000 mm per annum. Average daily temperatures at all sites exceed 25°C all the year round. Relative humidity varies from 55 to 95 per cent according to season and location. Sites in areas subject to an excess of precipitation over evaporation, where laterisation of the soil is relatively advanced and the subsoil is saturated, are liable to subsidence and slippage.

Materials

a) Timber, Bamboo and Thatch

Timber, bamboo and thatch have traditionally been the most widely used building materials, but because of their organic nature they are particularly subject to decay (rot and insect damage) and fire damage. Consequently, few timber monuments have survived from before the nineteenth century. Teak (Tectona grandis) is relatively resistant to insect attack and is widely used, both structurally and ornamentally, in the construction of domestic and religious and royal structures. In the more elaborate private dwellings teak panelling is widely used in place of the more usual plaited bamboo or thatch. In religious structures it is used in the fabrication of doors, windows and frames, suspended ceilings and roofing. Teak, bamboo, thatch and woven matting are also used in the fabrication of temporary ceremonial structures, the finest of which are constructed for the cremation of deceased members of the Royal Family.
b) Stone

Sandstone and laterite are the two principal building stones used in Thailand. Limestone is less common. Marble was used, both externally and internally, to ornament Royal palaces and ancillary structures during the nineteenth century. In contrast to laterite, which weathers well, the red/grey sandstone is susceptible to decay as a result of: a) the crystallisation of soluble salts drawn from the subsoil by capillary action; and b) physico-chemical erosion by fungi, moss and lichen. To protect both the laterite and sandstone from the elements, they are traditionally plastered with a protective coating of lime stucco.

c) Mud and Unbaked Brick

Mud (adobe) and unbaked brick structures are rare in Thailand.

d) Baked Brick and Terracotta

Baked brick is widely used for the construction of stupas, temples, monasteries, palaces and ancillary buildings. Glazed polychrome earthenware roof tiles (reddish yellow with a light yellow or green surround) are widely used to roof temples, monasteries and palace buildings, as well as more humble domestic structures (red).

e) Binding Materials

Lime, made by burning shells, mixed with sand is widely used to bind both stone and brick structures. Normally the process of decay is a gradual one, but the presence of rice husks, straw and other organic materials may accelerate the process as a result of insect attack.

f) Metal

Silver, gold, iron, lead, copper and bronze are widely used in Thailand for the fabrication of religious images and the ornamentation of both religious (temples, stupas and monasteries) and royal (palaces and ancillary buildings) structures. Iron dowels, angles and clamps are used in many stone structures, and their corrosion is a major problem. The corrosion of copper and bronze, 'bronze disease', is also widespread.
g) Stucco and Other Finishes

Lime stucco has traditionally been used to both protect and enhance sandstone, laterite and baked brick structures. In general, lime, made by burning shells, was used with sand and occasionally other organic materials, such as rice husks and straw, to build up a protective coating approximately 1 cm in thickness. Where the wall is to be painted, a second layer of fine lime plaster is applied as a ground for the wall-painting. In many instances, stupas have been repeatedly coated with layers of stucco, it being a meritorious act according to the Buddhist canon. More recently, cement has been used as a protective and decorative surface coating. Cryptomatic growths (algae, moss and lichen, etc.) cause discolouration of lime and cement stucco and, where capillary action has caused the crystallisation of salts to take place in the supporting structure, cracking, spalling and lamination may take place.

h) Ornamentation

Thailand has a tradition of sumptuous ornamentation which is only matched by the Union of Burma. Carved stucco, wood and stone carving, gilding, glass mosaic, wall-paintings, lacquer, glazed polychrome tiles, copper and bronze, are all used to ornament temples, stupas, monasteries, palaces, audience halls and ancillary structures. Carved stucco is used to model the features of reclining and sitting Buddhas, the core of which is usually baked brick laid in lime mortar, and to surface stupas, columns, finials, stringcourses and other features. Temple roofs, particularly gable ends, are elaborately carved with Nagas (snakes) and various other Brahmanical divinities, such as Indra and Vishnu, and the whole is surrounded, more often than not, with a flame-like motif. The whole of this elaborate composition is usually inlaid with either gold or coloured glass mosaic or gold leaf. Windows, doors, frames and suspended ceilings are also elaborately carved. Stone carving is usually restricted to free-standing images and bas-reliefs. Gilding, apart from being used to ornament gable ends, is used to ornament colossal Buddha images and architectural elements, such as columns, beams and rafters, and temple fittings and furnishings. Glass mosaic is applied to columns, free-standing images and other structures. Usually it is bedded in wet lime stucco or pitch. Lacquer is widely used to ornament temple fittings and furnishing, such as Sutra chests, often in association with mother-of-pearl inlay. Glazed polychrome tiles adorn the traditional triple-
Ornamentation (cont.)

roofs of temples, monasteries, palaces, audience halls and other structures. Cast bronze and copper images, many of them gilded, are prolific in their numbers and ornament every class of structure.

i) Wall Paintings

Wall paintings once graced the walls of every temple in Thailand, but today few remain because of the effects of time, vandalism and neglect. Invariably they are executed in tempera on a dry ground comprising lime, sand and sugarcane juice. Traditionally, the ground was treated with washes of water containing Kee-Lek (Cassia siamea leguminosa) leaves to remove any soluble salts that might be present. This washing was stopped when a solution of 'khamin' (Curcuma domestica) remained colourless. The ground was then washed with clean water and a gesso finish of lime mixed with tamarind seed paste was applied. When dry, the wall-painting was applied, using mainly mineral pigments bound with 'yang-ma-quit' (a gum from the Feronia elephantum rutacae).

The principal causes of decay are water penetration, efflorescence, flaking and blistering of the paint layer, disintegration of the binding medium, bleaching and fading of the paint layer, crumbling and disintegration of the support, and softening and splitting of the ground. These problems are widespread and increasingly acute due to lack of maintenance and faulty restoration and repair (these matters are discussed in more detail in Section II: Extrinsic Causes, Actions of Man, sub-sections (a) and (e)).

Construction

a) Substructure

Foundations are traditionally shallow. Thus differential settlement and slippage are not uncommon at sites subject to regular inundation and saturation as a result of subsoil conditions and drainage.

b) Superstructure

The oldest surviving Thai monuments are load bearing monolithic

---

Construction (cont.)

structures of baked brick and laterite. In common with their neighbours, the Burmese, the Thais use brick arches as well lintels and corbelling to bridge openings. The massive, load-bearing brick walls of temple, monastery, palace, audience hall and ancillary buildings are thick and battered on the outer face. Timber structures are built on the traditional post and lintel system of construction, the massive triple roofs, comprising three separate pitches of increasing angle which together form a graceful curve, being supported by a forest of columns. Later, European neo-classical structures, constructed from the early nineteenth century onwards, are the first to introduce the semi-circular headed arch.

2. EXTRINSIC CAUSES

Actions of Man

a) Lack of Maintenance.

Because of the number of monuments and sites surviving in Thailand, many of which have not been properly surveyed and recorded, and the limited resources available to the Department of Fine Arts at Bangkok, lack of maintenance is a problem of particular concern affecting as it does some of the most important monuments and sites in the country, such as Wat Dusidaram and Wat Suwannaram at Thonburi, Wat Maha That and Wat Ratburana at Ayuthia, Wat Chedi Chet Thaw at Sukhothai, Wat Phra Singh at Chiang Mai, and Wat Arun (Temple of Dawn) and the Temple of the Emerald Buddha at Bangkok.

b) Abandonment and Squatting

Abandoned monuments and sites, many of them in remote regions where ground communications are difficult, are numerous in Thailand. Many are of prehistoric origin, but some are of more recent origin, such as the former capitals of Ayuthia, Sukhothai, Lopburi and Thonburi, where monuments are numerous. Outwith the Bangkok Metropolitan Area (BMA),

Squatting is not a major problem at monuments and sites.

c) Robbery and Vandalism

Because of the number of abandoned monuments and sites in Thailand and the absence in most cases of any security, robbery and vandalism are widespread problems. Stone and bronze images are among some of the many items of cultural property illicitly exported via Bangkok, either in the baggage of tourists or in the cargo holds of aircraft and ships bound for Singapore and Hong Kong, from whence they are exported to Japan, the United States of America and Europe.

d) Alteration and Demolition

Monuments in regular use, particularly religious structures such as temples, monasteries and stupas, are subject to frequent alteration, redecoration and, occasionally, demolition and reconstruction, it being a meritorious act according to the Buddhist canon. Abandoned structures are often demolished for their building materials by local villagers for the construction of dwellings, temples and stupas.

e) Faulty Restoration and Repair

Ironically, it is only the ruined and abandoned monuments at such sites as Ayuthia, Thonburi, Lopburi and Sukhothai, that retain their original characteristics; monuments in regular use, particularly religious structures such as temples, monasteries and stupas, being subject to continuous restoration and repair, ornamentation and alteration. Because of the limited resources of the Department of Fine Arts at Bangkok, it is unable to supervise the work undertaken by religious trusts and private owners.

f) Unauthorised Excavations

The unauthorised excavation of abandoned monuments and sites at isolated jungle sites in the provinces of Udon Thani and Sakon Nakon has reached epidemic proportions since the discovery of a major prehistoric site of painted pottery at Ban Chiang in 1967. Because of the rarity of Ban Chiang ware, it is in considerable demand among antiquarians, collectors and antique dealers, and local villagers are financed to indulge in treasure
hunting. The problem reached its height in 1972, when literally tens of thousands of villagers throughout Udon Thani, Sakon Nakon and other provinces were engaged in the practice. A press campaign inspired and led by the Society for the Conservation of National Treasures and Environment (SCONTE), an organisation of younger community leaders drawn from both Government and private commercial ranks, resulted in Government intervention in July 1972 and the promulgation of a special law (National Executive Council Announcement No.189) requiring the registration of all Ban Chiang ware. Within the first six months of the law's operation, more than seven thousand pieces were registered by the National Museum at Bangkok. Although the exportation of Ban Chiang ware is prohibited under the provisions of the 1972 special law, examples continue to find a place in public collections abroad.¹²

g) Customary Use

The burning of incense, cooking and lighting with paraffin and oil lamps, results in the deposit of carbon, grease and other tarry and oily surface coatings on ceilings and walls, causing discolouration. The effects of such customary uses as regular religious worship have been noted in sub-sections (d) and (e).

h) Change of Use

Changes of use and intensification of existing uses are not major causes of concern.

i) Urbanisation and Encroachment

Since 1945, the historic core of Bangkok, centred on the 'klangs' (canals and watercourses) and historic monuments of Bangkok and its twin city, Thonburi, on the west and east banks of the Menam Chao Phraya River respectively, have been engulfed in a sea of low-rise, medium-density, development of unsurpassed drabness. Many klangs have been infilled to build roads and the setting of many of the cities one hundred and fifty

¹ Morley, Dr. Grace., 'Protection of Cultural Property in Southeast Asia', Report and Recommendations of the ICOM Meeting of Experts at Malacca, 12-13 December 1972, ICOM Regional Agency in Asia, New Delhi, 1973, p.9
² Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok, 'Archaeological Sites, Historical Monuments and Site Arrangement', Bangkok, 1972, p.433.
or so monuments has been destroyed by the encroachment of both public and private works, such as offices, hotels and shopping complexes. The principal reasons for the city's rapid urban development are: a) the political stability of the country until 1974, which attracted foreign investment and commercial development, and the presence of American military forces during the Vietnam War on 'rest and recreation' (R and R), which stimulated the development of tourism and service industries and encouraged the influx of villagers into the city. Despite the increase in tourist traffic and receipts since 1974, Bangkok has begun to suffer from a paucity of investment because of fears of a Communist takeover in the aftermath of the fall of Indochina, and today an estimated forty per cent of the population is employed and living in poor 'shack' slum areas.\(^1\)

j) Fire Damage

Fire is a major cause of decay of timber monuments and compliance with fire regulations often has serious implications for the integrity of historic structures.

k) Pollution

Bangkok is one of the most polluted cities in Asia. All household refuse and effluent is discharged into the Menam Chao Praya River via the numerous klangs which wander through the historic core of the city, and air pollution is caused by heavy private and commercial traffic. Car parking is a major problem in the historic core.\(^2\)

l) War Damage

Thailand's cultural heritage suffered only minor damage during the Second World War. More recently the Preah Vihear Temple, which is situated on the very border of Thailand and Democratic Khampouchea (on the Khmer side) was occupied by Thai troops who were only withdrawn after the International Court of Justice in the Hague intervened in the situation.\(^3\)

---

3. From 1907 until 1954, when Cambodia contested possession, the temple was regarded as a Thai monument. The International Court ruled in Cambodia's favour in 1962. In 1970, Thai troops and border police occupied the site engaging with North Vietnamese regular units.
Occasional Actions of Nature

a) Earthquakes and Landslides

Earthquake activity is minimal and damage is negligible. Landslides are not uncommon at upland sites where subsoil conditions and drainage are poor.

b) Volcanic Activity

Volcanic activity is negligible.

c) Flooding

Bangkok is constructed on low-lying ground with a high water table. The city floods regularly during the Southwest Monsoon (May-September) which brings overcast skies and heavy rainfall.

d) Tsunamis

No instance of a tsunami has been recorded in recent history.

e) Typhoons and Cyclones

Thailand lies within the typhoon and cyclone belts. The areas most subject to their effects are the Menan Chao Prayadelta and the Isthmus of Kra. Wind damage is occasionally widespread.

Prolonged Actions of Nature

a) Precipitation, Relative Humidity, Temperature and Wind

Precipitation, relative humidity and temperature are the three principal physical causes of decay, the effects of which (rot, rising dampness, flooding, corrosion, etc.) are dependent upon the exact location, materials and construction of the monument and site in question, as previously noted in Section I: Intrinsic Causes of Decay. However, over prolonged periods other changes of a physico-chemical, micro-biological and biological nature also occur. The effects of these are noted in the following sub-sections (b) to (g). Physical erosion by windborne particulates is negligible in Thailand.
Prolonged Actions of Nature (cont.)

b) Fungi and Mold

Fungi and mold are widespread and disfigure many monuments and sites constructed of hygroscopic materials (timber, lime stucco, etc.). Sandstone, baked brick and laterite structures are also subject to surface erosion as a result of oxalic and citric acid secretion. Damage to wall paintings is widespread. The situation is rendered acute by the lack of maintenance at many monuments and sites.

c) Moss and Lichen

Moss, lichen and algae, which are often found in association, disfigure many monuments and sites constructed of hygroscopic materials. Surface erosion of sandstone, baked brick and laterite structures occurs as a result of the secretion of acids which, in association with water, break down the matrix of the carrier. As previously noted in sub-section (b), damage to wall paintings is widespread and the situation is rendered acute by the lack of maintenance at many monuments and sites.

d) Plants and Trees

Plants and trees flourish in the hot and wet conditions prevailing in Thailand, and many monuments and sites, such as Sukhothai, Thonburi and Ayuthia, are overgrown and in danger of being destroyed as a result of mechanical damage caused by tree root growth and water penetration. As previously noted in sub-sections (b) and (e), the situation is rendered acute by the lack of maintenance at many monuments and sites.

e) Insects

Insect infestation is the principal cause of decay of timber and timber-based materials. Drywood termites (Kalotermitidae) and other free-flying pests, such as powder-post beetles (Lyctidae and Bostrychidae), make their homes in the sapwood of the hardwood attacked. Soil or subterranean termites (Idotermitidae, Rhinotermitidae and Thermitidae) are more numerous and widespread, but need to maintain contact with the ground. Both problems are widespread in Thailand because of the hot and humid conditions prevailing.
Prolonged Actions of Nature (cont.)

f) Birds and Bats

Nesting birds and bats cause physical damage by burrowing, and their excrement causes disfigurement and chemical damage to wall paintings and copper and bronze images. As previously noted in sub-sections (b) to (d), the situation is rendered acute by the lack of maintenance at many monuments and sites.

g) Animals

Domestic animals (pigs and goats) cause both physical damage by foraging and chemical damage by their excrement to monuments and sites. Larger animals, such as elephants, also cause physical damage in the northern provinces of Thailand. There have also been instances of subsidence caused by burrowing salt-water turtles at coastal sites.
**Fig. 207 Thailand - Causes of Decay**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Substructure</th>
<th>Superstructure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microclimate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsoil Conditions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drainage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber and Bamboo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mud and Unbaked Brick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baked Brick and Terracotta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binding Materials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stucco and Other Finishes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ornamentation and Wall Paintings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intrinsic Causes</th>
<th>Lack of Maintenance</th>
<th>Abandonment and Squatting</th>
<th>Robbery and Vandalism</th>
<th>Alteration and Demolition</th>
<th>Faulty Restoration and Repair</th>
<th>Unauthorised Excavations</th>
<th>Customary Use</th>
<th>Change of Use</th>
<th>Urbanisation and Encroachment</th>
<th>Fire Damage</th>
<th>Pollution</th>
<th>War</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>Earthquakes and Landslides</th>
<th>Volcanic Activity</th>
<th>Flooding</th>
<th>Tsunamis</th>
<th>Typhoons and Cyclones</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extrinsic Causes</th>
<th>Precipitation</th>
<th>Relative Humidity</th>
<th>Temperature</th>
<th>Wind</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occasional Actions of Nature</th>
<th>Fungi and Mold</th>
<th>Moss and Lichen</th>
<th>Plants and Trees</th>
<th>Insects</th>
<th>Birds and Bats</th>
<th>Animals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prolonged Actions of Nature</th>
<th>Fungi and Mold</th>
<th>Moss and Lichen</th>
<th>Plants and Trees</th>
<th>Insects</th>
<th>Birds and Bats</th>
<th>Animals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. 208  Thailand - Decaying Buddha head, Ayuthia.
Renowned for its exquisite wall-paintings, the temple is in danger of imminent collapse due to foundation failure.

Detail of damaged wall-painting (external) above entrance doorway.
Fig. 211 Thailand - Buddhaisawan Chapel, Bangkok. The chapel is renowned for its wall-paintings.

Fig. 212 Thailand - Buddhaisawan Chapel, Bangkok. Detail of wall-painting damaged by separation of plaster lacunae from wall.
Fig. 213  Thailand - Buddhasawan Chapel, Bangkok. Detail of wall-painting damaged by separation of plaster lacunae from wall.

Fig. 214  Thailand - Buddhasawan Chapel, Bangkok. Detail of wall-painting damaged by separation of paint layer from plaster ground.
Fig. 215  Thailand - Buddhasawan Chapel, Bangkok. Detail of wall-painting damaged by efflorescence.

Fig. 216  Thailand - Buddhasawan Chapel, Bangkok. Detail of wall-painting damaged by rainwater.
5. CONSERVATION POLICY AND PROGRAMMES

1. HISTORICAL EVOLUTION OF GUIDING PRINCIPLES

Thailand, or Siam as the country was known until 1939, alone escaped colonisation in Southeast Asia. Until 1932, it remained an absolute monarchy and because of this, the historical evolution of guiding principles was very different to that of her neighbours under the 'protection' of France and Britain, being largely based upon royal patronage and the formation of private museum collections than upon excavation and research.

It was King Mongkut (1851-68) who established the royal collection of archaeological and epigraphic items that was subsequently to become the basis of the National Museum collection in Bangkok. After his accession to the throne, King Mongkut created a small museum, in the style of the eighteenth century amateur collector, in the compound of the Royal Palace at Bangkok. His son, King Chulalongkorn, opened the museum to the public in 1874 and founded the Royal Library in 1881. In 1908 he founded the Archaeological Club of Siam, and his own son, King Vajiravudh, explored the northern provinces of Siam, publishing a monograph on the towns of Phra Ruang. However, it is Prince Damrong, the Minister of the Interior of the Court of King Chulalongkorn, who is generally acknowledged to be the father of Siamese archaeology, and to whose boundless energy Siam largely owes the recovery of its past. As a private collector, Prince Damrong encouraged the early establishment of provincial collections, often associated with monasteries which possessed extensive collections of Buddha images, votive objects and archaeological items from the surrounding area, so that by the beginning of the twentieth century Siam had established a network of regional archaeological museums. The first to be founded, in 1902, was the Ayudhya Museum. The Lopburi Museum was founded in 1923, and in 1923, 1935, 1953 and 1954, they were followed by provincial museums at Rajaburi, Suratthani, Singhaburi and Rachasima respectively.

The surveying and cataloguing of archaeological sites and monuments in the field, was largely left to European travellers, explorers and scholars. One of the earliest, Joao de Barros, writing in his journal

1. Vajiravudh, H.M. 'Thiew Muang Phra Ruang' (Tours in Phra Ruang's towns).
2. Morley, Dr. Grace. 'Museums in South, Southeast and East Asia: Survey and Report', ICOM Regional Agency in Asia, New Delhi, 1971, pp.101-11
Historical Evolution of Guiding Principles (cont.)

noted '...pagodas which house Buddhas...', but it was not until the late seventeenth century that the Siamese monumental heritage was fully revealed to the west by Father Bouvet in his 'Voyage de Siam', published in Paris in 1687, and in which he observed that:

'...not one of these pagodas but is entirely painted within, and is accompanied without a number of carefully wrought pyramids of different sizes. The body of these pyramids, as of the others, is ornamented with a kind of architectural order which has some resemblance to our own, but which being more charged with sculptures, and lacking the simplicity and the proportions of ours, has not the same beauty, at least in our eyes, which are not yet accustomed to it...'

Later visitors to Siam included some of the great pioneers of Khmer archaeology such as L. Fournereau and Lunet de Lajonquiere, who compiled the first national inventory of monuments, which was later revised and updated by E. Seidenfaden. The first descriptive inventory was compiled by J.Y. Claeys and published in 1929. The search for the Kingdom of Dvaravati, described by the twelfth century Chinese pilgrim, Hiuen-Tsiang, began in earnest in 1384 following the publication of S. Beal's translation of the chronicle. It was not until 1943, however, that two silver coins bearing the name of Dvaravati were unearthed, and the home of Dvaravati was firmly established in southern Siam.

The Siam Society, which was founded in 1904, played an important role in the development of Siamese studies, but it was not until 1925 that an Archaeological Survey was established by Prince Damrong and the eminent French scholar, G. Coedes. A year later, the Bangkok Museum was founded, and the Royal Library and the Archaeological Survey were merged to form the Directorate of Arts. One of the first acts of the Survey was to clear the sites of Wat Mahathat at Lopburi, and Wat Sri Sarapeth and Buchaisavan at Ayudhya. Two vast Buddhist sanctuaries of an hitherto unknown type were cleared by P. Dupont at Nakhon Pathom in 1939-40. The vast store of decorative stucco work and other material recovered from the site enabled him to offer the first description of the art and architecture of Dvaravati.1 Later, a systematic excavation campaign by the Thai Fine Arts Department revealed the variety, richness and frequently classic beauty of Dvaravati. The classification

Historical Evolution of Guiding Principles (cont.)

of Siamese Buddhist sculpture was undertaken by R.S. Le May, and published in 1938. The systematic recording of wall-paintings was only undertaken recently, by Elizabeth Lyons, an expert provided by the Ford Foundation.

Legislative protection was first extended to the country's cultural heritage in 1923 under the provisions of the Royal Decree on the Inspection and Maintenance of Antiquities. Three years later, the Act on the Export of Antiquities and Art Objects and the Act on the Establishment of the Bangkok Museum (later to become the National Museum) were enacted. The years 1934, 1943 and 1961 witnessed the enactment of further legislation on ancient monuments, objects of art, antiques, and national museums.

2. POLICY AND PROGRAMMES

National Conservation Policy

The 1954 UNESCO Convention and Protocol for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (the Hague Convention) was ratified by Thailand on 2 May 1958. However, neither the 1970 UNESCO Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property, nor the 1972 UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, has been ratified to date.

Conservation Programmes

Since its foundation in 1934, the Department of Fine Arts has pursued an ambitious programme of excavations and restorations beginning with Wat Mahathat at Lopburi, and Wat Sri Sarapeth and Wat Budhaisawan at Ayutthaya. Recent projects have included:

1. Restoration of old towns of Sukhothai, Sri Satchanalai and Kamphaengphet, and neighbouring monuments (since 1953);

Conservation Programmes (cont.)

2. Restoration of old city of Ayutthaya, and neighbouring monuments (since 1969);
3. Restoration of Phanom Rung Stone Sanctuary, Nang Rong District, Buriram Province (since 1971);
4. Restoration of ancient monuments in the old town of Chiangsaen, and neighbouring monuments (1957-62);
5. Exploration and excavation of prehistoric sites in nine provinces of the north east region of Thailand (since 1972);
6. Exploration and excavation of sites in four provinces of north east region of Thailand that will become inundated as a result of construction of Pha-Rong Dam (since 1972);
7. Restoration of Phanom Wan Stone Sanctuary, Nakhon Phayatrasima Province (since 1969);
8. Restoration of old towns of Muang Phra Rot and Prasat Muang Phai, Prachinburi (since 1969); and

In collaboration with the Department of Fine Arts, the Faculty of Archaeology of Silpakorn University, Bangkok, is undertaking research into the undernoted areas:

1. Dvaravati urbanisation in Nakhon Nayok Province - the main objective of the programme is to establish the existence of a moated town of the Dvaravati period (c.600-1000 A.D); and
2. Prehistoric culture of Ban Chieng in Northeast Thailand - the main objective of the programme is to establish the relationship between widely spread sites in the region, and to search for significant evidence of cultural development from farming hamlets to urban settlements.

3. INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL COOPERATION

Bilateral Government Programmes

The following governments have each provided experts in various fields:

1. Denmark - Excavation of prehistoric sites in Northwest Thailand;
Bilateral Government Programmes (cont.)

2. France - Two French experts on anastylosis methods assisted in the restoration of Pipai in Northeast Thailand in 1966-68;

3. United Kingdom - A team of archaeologists excavated prehistoric sites in Southwest Thailand in search of stone and bronze tools in 1966-68; and


International Governmental Agencies

Thailand is a member of the United Nations (UN) and its sister agency, the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). The latter has provided expert advice in the fields of conservation science, cultural tourism and the conservation of cultural property over the last two decades.

At the request of the Thailand Government, UNESCO sent the late Dr. Paul Coremans, founder and former director of the Institut Royal du Patrimoine Artistique, Brussels, to study and suggest the best means of preserving the country's artistic heritage in 1961. As a result of his mission a small conservation workshop was established by the Department of Fine Arts at the National Museum, Bangkok.

In 1967, a second mission was sent to Thailand to assist the Department of Fine Arts expand the conservation workshop founded six years earlier as a result of Coremans' mission into a national conservation laboratory, and to establish a programme for the conservation of wall-paintings in Bangkok and elsewhere. The expert chosen for the mission was Dr. O.P. Agrawal, Head of the National Conservation Laboratory, National Museum, New Delhi, an international authority on conservation in the tropics and an expert on wall-paintings.1

A year later, UNESCO sent a third mission to Thailand, to survey the country's principal monuments and sites and to suggest programmes and procedures to be followed in their conservation, and to evaluate their potential as tourist attractions. On this occasion, UNESCO sent two

---

experts to Thailand, Professor Bunji Kobayashi, Professor of History of Architecture, Nihon University, Japan, and Robert R. Garvey Jnr., Executive Secretary, Advisory Council on Historic Preservation and Special Assistant to the Director, U.S. National Park Service.¹

Two further missions were sent to Thailand in 1972: Dr. O.P. Agrawal returning once again in the company of Dr. Paul Philippot, former Director of the International Centre for Conservation (the Rome Centre), to obtain first-hand knowledge of existing administrative and technical structures, plans for development, and conservation problems and requirements; and two leading French experts, Pierre Pichard and B.P. Groslier, the authority on Khmer art and archaeology, advising the Department of Fine Arts on the conservation of Thanom Rung stone sanctuary, Nang Rong, Buriram Province.

At its nineteenth session held at Nairobi, Kenya, in October-November 1976, the General Conference of UNESCO authorised the Director-General to undertake a campaign to mobilise international support for the preservation and promotion of Sukhothai, the historic former capital in North Thailand, and preparations are now under way to launch the campaign in late 1978.²

As a former Member State of the now defunct Southeast Asian Treaty Organisation (SEATO), Thailand not only had its independence guaranteed but also received technical assistance in the field of conservation, B.P. Groslier being sent on a mission to advise the Department of Fine Arts on the conservation of Pimai Sanctuary, Nakhon Ratchasima Province, in 1964.

As a Member State of the South East Asian Ministers of Education Organisation (SEAMEO), Thailand is playing an active part in the creation of regional training facilities through the establishment of a sub-regional training centre for underwater archaeology at Bangkok and Satahip.³

International Non-Governmental Agencies

Thailand is among the earliest members of the International Council of Museums (ICOM), its national committee being established in 1947. It also acts as host to the ICOM Regional Agency in Asia for part of each year, an office in the compound of the National Museum, Bangkok, being provided by the Department of Fine Arts. In 1970, Dr. O.P. Agrawal, on this occasion acting on behalf of ICOM, revisited Thailand to advise the Department of Fine Arts on the conservation of wall paintings in the provinces of Thonburi and Nonthburi. Later the same year, the late G.R. Gairola undertook a brief survey of the country's conservation problems, particularly with regard to bronzes in the collection of the National Museum, Bangkok.

A national committee for the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) has only recently been established.

Private Foundations

Between October 1974 and September 1978, The Ford Foundation, under the provisions of its Art and Archaeology Programme in Southeast Asia, provided support for a number of projects in the fields of archaeology, museums, conservation, traditional arts and education. In the field of archaeology, the Foundation's immediate response to the discoveries at Ban Chiang has yielded results of international importance. A mutual cooperation contract with the University of Philadelphia Museum provided technical support for the Faculty of Archaeology, Silpakorn University, Bangkok, and this was further strengthened by a number of modest grants which enabled the Joint-Director of the project to establish a teaching programme and purchase basic text books. A small amount of equipment was also purchased and a number of trainees from Silpakorn University were employed at the site. Over a two year period, the Foundation supported a number of short-term specialist missions, both local and foreign, to teach and analyse the wealth of material excavated at the site. It also funded a number of individual specialists from other Southeast Asian nations, to enable them to observe or participate in

the excavations. The other major archaeological project supported by the Foundation in Thailand was the Mekong Archaeological Survey, a multinational undertaking involving the former governments of the Kingdom of Laos, the Republic of Vietnam and the Khmer Republic. The Survey, which was under the direction of the Otago University, New Zealand, successfully completed the survey stage of the project and identified a number of sites, but none were of sufficient importance to delay the proposed damming of the Mekong. In the field of conservation, the Foundation has supported a number of projects. One Thai student attended the International Centre for Conservation (the Rome Centre) advanced course on the preservation of murals, and has since conducted local courses for fine arts graduates and National Museum staff in Bangkok. Two additional grants were given to a private Thai foundation to establish training courses in conservation for monks in provincial areas, and the Siam Society has followed up these training courses by having the basis instructions printed in a Thai language newspaper so that they should also reach the lay congregation, and they are currently planning a booklet to be distributed by the Religious Affairs Council. Numerous other grants have been made to the Siam Society, the Science Museum, the Lopburi Provincial Museum, and various individuals for educational purposes.

The John D. Rockefeller III Fund has been active in Southeast Asia since 1962, and under the provisions of its Asian Cultural Programme a number of projects have been supported in Thailand, of which the Thai Bronze Project established in 1974 is one of the most important. In 1971, Mr. Tom Chase, Head Conservator of the Freer Gallery of Art, Washington D.C., visited Thailand on behalf of the Fund to investigate conservation facilities in the country. In his report he concluded that there was a pressing need for bronze conservation facilities. Later,

1. The results of the excavations at Ban Chiang are now being studied and documented by the Thai-American team. Meanwhile the Government of Thailand has provided a grant to enable the excavations to continue, constructed a new access road and site museum, and provided three scholarships in archaeology to enable two students to continue their studies at the University of Pennsylvania, and one at Otago University, New Zealand.


at the request of the Department of Fine Arts, the Fund's proposed scheme was expanded to include a training programme and project exhibition. The agreement formally establishing the Thai Bronze Project was signed in March 1974. A total of more than eleven thousand individual bronzes in the collections of the seventeen state and provincial museums were individually inspected. The main conservation work was undertaken at the Chao Sam Phraya Museum at Ayutthaya.

1. LEGISLATION

Because of its political independence, Siam did not inherit legislation conceived in the corridors of power of Westminster or the Quai D'Orsay, as did its immediate neighbours, Burma, Malaya and Indo-China. Current legislation dates from 1961, in which year the Act on Ancient Monuments, Antiques, Objects of Art and National Museums, B.E.2504 was enacted.

Definitions

Under section 4 of the 1961 Act, the term 'ancient monument' is defined as:

'...an immovable property which, by its age or architectural characteristics or historical evidence, is useful in the field of art, history or archaeology...'.

The term 'antique' is defined as:

'...an archaic movable property, whether produced by man or by nature, or being any part of ancient monument or of human skeleton or animal carcass which, by its age or characteristics of production or historical evidence, is useful in the field of art, history or archaeology...'.

The term 'object of art' is defined as:

'...a thing produced by craftsmanship which is appreciated as being valuable in the field of art...'.

Ancient Monuments

Under section 7 of the 1961 Act, the Director-General of the Department of Fine Arts, hereinafter referred to as the Director-General, is empowered to cause any monument he thinks fit to be registered by means of publication in the Government Gazette, and to determine such area of land as he thinks fit to be its compound, which area is also considered to be an ancient monument, '...for the purpose of keeping, maintaining and controlling...' the said ancient monument. The owner or lawful possessor of the said ancient monument must be notified in writing of the proposed registration and, if dissatisfied, has thirty days in which to appeal for a court order to prevent the Director-General proceeding with the proposed registration.
Ancient Monuments (cont.)

Under section 9 of the 1981 Act, the owner or lawful registered ancient monument which is '...deteriora or being damaged by any means whatsoever...', is required by the Director-General thereof within thirty days of his occurrence.

Under section 10 of the 1981 Act, no person may 'alter any ancient monument or excavate for anything of an ancient monument...', except by order of the Director-General, which may be subject to conditions.

Under section 11 of the 1981 Act, the Director-General may order any person appointed by the Minister, or any '...make a repair or to do whatsoever for its rest preservation of its original condition...', provided that the lawful possessor thereof has been notified in writing.

Under section 12 of the 1981 Act, the transferor of any registered ancient monument must inform the Director-General thereof within thirty days. Any person acquiring ownership as a result of inheritance or by will must inform the Director-General thereof within sixty days.

Antiques and Objects of Art

Under section 14 of the 1981 Act, the Director-General is empowered '...if he deems that any antique or object of art not being in the possession of the Department of Fine Arts is of special value in the field of art, history or archaeology...' to cause such antique or object of art to be registered by means of publication in the Government Gazette.

Under section 15 of the 1981 Act, no person may '...repair, modify or alter any registered antique or object of art...' without first obtaining a permit from the Director-General. Such permit may be subject to conditions.
Antiques and Objects of Art (cont.)

Under section 16 of the 1961 Act, the possessor of any registered antique or object of art which is '...deteriorating, dilapidating, damaged or lost...', is required to inform the Director-General thereof within thirty days of his being aware of its occurrence.

Under section 17 of the 1961 Act, the transferor of any registered antique or object of art must inform the Director-General thereof within thirty days. Any person acquiring ownership as a result of inheritance or by will must inform the Director-General thereof within sixty days.

Exportation of Antiques and Objects of Art

Under section 22 of the 1961 Act, no person may export or take out of the country any antique or object of art, irrespective of whether they are registered or not, without first obtaining a permit from the Director-General.

Treasure Trove

Under section 24 of the 1961 Act, any antique or object of art '...buried in or concealed or abandoned at any place under such circumstances that no one could claim to be the owner, and whether the place of burial or concealment or abandonment be owned or possessed by any person...' becomes the property of the state. The finder thereof must deliver the said antique or object of art to the competent administrative or police official under the Criminal Procedure Code. Such finder is entitled to a reward of one-third of the value of such property.

Power to Make Rules

Under section 13 of the 1961 Act, the Minister is empowered '...when it is deemed appropriate for preserving the condition or tidiness...' of a registered ancient monument, to issue a Ministerial Regulation on conduct of visitors during their visit and, with particular regard to any ancient monument not owned or lawfully possessed by any individual, to fix an admission fee not exceeding thirty Baht.
Under section 31 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of an offence under section 24 of the said Act may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding two years or with fine not exceeding four thousand Baht, or both.

Under section 32 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of damaging, destroying or causing depreciation in value to, or making useless any ancient monument, may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding one year or with fine not exceeding two thousand Baht, or both. Furthermore, if the ancient monument is registered, the offender may be punished with a term of imprisonment not less than three months and not exceeding five years, and with fine not exceeding ten thousand Baht.

Under section 33 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of damaging, destroying or causing depreciation in value to, or making lost or useless, any antique or object of art, may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding two years or with fine not exceeding four thousand Baht, or both.

Under section 34 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of an offence under sections 9, 12, 16 or 17 of the said Act may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding one month or with fine not exceeding one thousand Baht, or both.

Under sections 35 and 36 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of offences under sections 10 and 15 of the said Act, or who fails to comply with the conditions of a permit granted thereunder, may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding one year or with fine not exceeding two thousand Baht, or both.

Under sections 38 and 39 of the 1961 Act, any person convicted of exporting or taking out of Thailand, any non-registered or registered antique or object of art in violation of section 22, may be punished with a term of imprisonment not exceeding one year or with fine not exceeding two thousand Baht, and a term of imprisonment not less than three months and not exceeding five years and with fine not exceeding.
In an attempt to prevent increasing vandalism and the destruction of antiques and objects of art, as defined under section 4 of the 1961 Act, in the areas of Udon Thani and Sakon Nakon Provinces, the National Executive Council announced in the Royal Gazette of 27 July 1972 (2515) that it was taking special powers to control illegal excavations and trafficking in the said provinces.

Under sections 1-5 of the Announcement, no person may dig, purchase or transfer antiquities and objects of art (as defined under section 4 of the 1961 Act), from Udon Thani and Sakon Nakon Provinces, without first obtaining a permit from the Director-General of the Department of Fine Arts. Owners or possessors of such antiquities and objects of art were required to declare the same to the Department before 22 August 1972, and those of '...special art, archaeological or historical interest...' were to be surrendered to the Director-General. Lastly, the Director-General was empowered to search for such antiquities and objects of art in any suspected place.

Town and Country Planning Legislation

Thailand is one of the few nations of such size in Monsoon Asia not to have any town and country planning legislation - the Town and Country Act (sic) 1952, having never been enforced on the grounds that it was 'defective'. A new act, designed to remedy the defects of the 1952 Act was discussed at great length in 1960 but never enacted. A third act, allowing for the compulsory purchase of land, was discussed in 1975 and subsequently abandoned. 

A master plan for Bangkok was prepared in 1961. A second plan, for the Greater Bangkok area, was prepared in 1970 by a team of American consultants. The latter document, which forecasts an increase from three to six and a half million in the population of the Bangkok Metropolitan Area between 1970 and 1990, is the principal planning document.

The national agency responsible for administering the 1961 Act, is the Department of Fine Arts. The Department, which is under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Education, is charged with responsibility for '...preserving, reviving and promoting Thai arts, history, literature, customs, architecture, music and drama...'. It is also charged with the responsibility of managing the National Library, the National Museum and the National Art Gallery, and their respective branches. For administrative purposes the country is divided into nine 'Fine Art Regions', namely:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fine Art Region</th>
<th>Location of Headquarters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 1</td>
<td>Muang Ayyutthaya District, Ayutthaya Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 2</td>
<td>Utong District, Suphan Buri Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 3</td>
<td>Muang Sukhothai District, Sukhothai Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 4</td>
<td>Muang Chiang Mai District, Chiang Mai Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 5</td>
<td>Muang Chachoengsao District, Chachoengsao Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 6</td>
<td>Pimai District, Nakhon Ratchasima Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 7</td>
<td>Muang Khon Kaen District, Khon Kaen Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 8</td>
<td>Muang Nakhon Si Thammarat District, Nakhon Si Thammarat Province.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region No. 9</td>
<td>Muang Songkhla District, Songkhla Province.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each regional office is headed by a chief officer who is directly responsible to the Director-General of the Department of Fine Arts.  

1. SEAMES, 'Proceedings of the Preparatory Conference'
Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok

The work of the Department of Fine Arts, which was founded in 1934, is divided amongst the undernoted ten divisions:

1. Office of Secretary;
2. Division of Archaeology;
3. Division of Museums;
4. Division of Architecture;
5. Division of Education;
6. Division of Music and Drama;
7. Division of Tradition;
8. Division of National Archives;
9. Division of National Library; and
10. Division of Literature and History.

The divisions of archaeology and museums are jointly concerned with the conservation of Thailand's heritage of ancient monuments, antiques and objects of art.

Division of Archaeology

The work of the division is divided amongst six sections:

1. Techniques;
2. Excavations;
3. Archaeological Survey;
4. National Ancient Monuments;
5. Provincial Ancient Monuments; and
6. Archaeological Restoration Laboratory.

Division of Museums

The work of the division is divided amongst three sections:

1. National Museum, Bangkok;
2. Provincial Museums (seventeen in all); and
3. National Conservation Laboratory.

1. Up until 1973, when the divisions of archaeology and museums of the Department of Fine Arts were reorganised, the two laboratories functioned as sections of the Technical Conservation Laboratory of the National Museum, Bangkok. The archaeological restoration laboratory, under the direction of Dr. Arphorn na Songkhla, deals with mural paintings and picture restoration. It is staffed by four artists, one archaeologist and two assistants. The national conservation laboratory, under the direction of Mrs. Kulapanthada, deals with organic and inorganic materials. It is staffed by three chemists and eight assistants.
Conservation-Related Government Agencies

A number of government agencies cooperate with the Department of Fine Arts in the conservation of Thailand's heritage of ancient monuments, antiquities and objects of art:

1. Department of Town and Country Planning;
2. Tourist Organisation of Thailand; and
3. Department of Industrial Promotion.

Department of Town and Country Planning

The Department of Town and Country Planning, which is under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of the Interior, aims to '...provide physical planning programmes in urban and rural areas so as to achieve better conditions for economic, social and physical environmental development of the country...'. Where '...planning and restoration can be identified as a district within an existing city...', the Department's engineering division may undertake restoration and maintenance works.

Tourist Organisation of Thailand

The Tourist Organisation of Thailand, which is an independent government agency, is the official government travel agency, but performs other functions such as research and planning, technical assistance, surveys, training and promotion.

Department of Industrial Promotion

The Department of Industrial Promotion, which is under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Industry, promotes local handicrafts and assists in the tracing of local materials and craftsmen.

Non-Government Conservation Agencies

A number of non-government agencies also cooperate with the Department of Fine Arts in the conservation of Thailand's heritage of ancient monuments, antiquities and objects of art:

Fig. 217  Thailand - Conservation and Related Agencies (1978).
Fig. 218  Thailand - Divisions of Archaeology and Museums, Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok.
FIG. 219 THAILAND - NATIONAL CONSERVATION STAFF RESOURCES (1973)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARCHAEOLOGICAL STAFF CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) Present Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional Staff</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Administrators/Managers</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Historians</td>
<td>32.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Archaeologists</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Philologists, Epigraphists &amp; Linguists</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ethnologists &amp; Cultural Anthropologists</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Museumologists/Curators</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Librarians</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Architects of Historical Monuments</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Excavation/Restoration Technicians</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Monument/Object Dating Specialists</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Others</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monument Excavation/Restoration/Conservation</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) Present Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Excavation Specialists</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Restoration Specialists:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Stone</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Metal</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Wood</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Monuments Conservation Specialists</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Draftsmen &amp; Topographers</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Photographers &amp; Photo-Interpreters</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Others</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cultural Property/Skeletal Excavation and Restoration/Conservation</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Excavation Specialists</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Restoration Specialists:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Stone</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Metal</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Wood</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Skeletons</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Textiles</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Documents, Paintings</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Pottery &amp; Ceramics</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Draftsmen &amp; Artists</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>15.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Internal Supporting Staff</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Exhibition Experts</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Public Relations Experts</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Trained Guides</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Others</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outside Specialists Resources</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Geographical &amp; Aerial Survey &amp; Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Geological Survey &amp; Analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Public Works Specialists (lab. technician draftsmen etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Climatological Survey Experts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Archaeological Legislation Experts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. ARCAFA Project Development Office (APDO), Report of Task Force on Manpower in Archaeology in the SEAMEO Region', SEAMEO, Phnom Penh, October 1973 (Table 7).
Non-Government Conservation Agencies (cont.)

1. Siam Society;
2. Society for the Preservation of Thai Properties; and
3. Association of Siamese Architects.

3. FINANCE

Under sections 28-30 of the 1931 Act, a fund, henceforward to be known as the 'Archaeological Fund', was established '...for the expenses of operation (sic) beneficial to ancient monuments or museum activity...', consisting of:

1) money acquired under this Act;
2) monetary benefits accruing from ancient monuments;
3) donation in cash or property; and
4) central fund or capital money which, under the law on ancient monuments, objects of art, antiques and national museums, is at the disposal of the Department of Fine Arts on the day of the coming into force of this Act'.

The keeping and payment of the archaeological fund is the responsibility of the Minister of Education.

The annual programme budget of the Department of Fine Arts for expenditure on excavation, and restoration and maintenance of registered ancient monuments, is approximately 2.73 million and 1.6 million Baht.¹

The total operating budget of the Department of Fine Arts is estimated to be over 16 million Baht.²

Bilateral and Multilateral Aid

Bilateral aid is usually granted in the form of scholarships which enable Thai students to study art, architecture, archaeology, museology and conservation in the grant-aiding country. Italy, for example, has provided five scholarships to enable staff of the Department of Fine Arts to train at the International Centre for Conservation (the Rome Centre). Belgium, in collaboration with UNESCO, has also provided two

². Caroengwongsa, Dr. P. in conversation with author.
Bilateral and Multilateral Aid

scholarships to enable two staff members of the former Technical Conservation Laboratory of the National Museum (subsequently divided into two separate sections, the Archaeological Research Laboratory and the National Conservation Laboratory), to train at the Conservation Laboratory of the Institut Royal du Patrimoine Artistique, Brussels.

Similar scholarships have been provided by the governments of France, the Netherlands, the United Kingdom, India, Australia and New Zealand.

Grant aid is often provided in the form of specialist materials (chemicals, photographic paper, etc.) and equipment (microscopes, scales, cameras, etc.), and foreign credits.

Private Foundations

Project-related financial assistance has been provided by the Ford Foundation, the John D. Rockefeller III Fund and the Asia Foundation.

4. EDUCATION AND TRAINING

The Department of Fine Arts recruits staff from a broad range of disciplines including: archaeology, history of art, ancient history, epigraphy, architecture, engineering, painting, sculpture, graphic and decorative arts.

The undernoted universities offer Bachelor of Arts (B.A.) and Master of Arts (M.A.) degree courses in archaeology and art history. The Silpakorn University also offers degree courses in painting, sculpture and graphic arts, and decorative arts:

1. Silpakorn University, Bangkok;
2. Thammasat University, Bangkok;
3. Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok;
4. Kasetsart University, Bangkok;
5. Chiang Mai University, Chiang Mai; and
6. Tabkae College, Silpakorn University, Nakhon Prathom.
Education and Training (cont.)

The Faculty of Architecture, King Mongut's Institute of Technology, Bangkok, offers a Bachelor of Architecture (B.Arch.) degree course. Degree courses in graphic arts and building technology are also planned for the future.

Overseas Training

Because of the shortage of specialist training facilities in the fields of museology, conservation science and restoration, the Thai Government has to send many students abroad. Since 1961, students have studied in Australia, Belgium, France, India, Italy, the Netherlands, New Zealand and the United Kingdom. However, Thailand is increasingly looking to its neighbours and fellow Member States of the Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Organisation (SEAMEO) for specialist regional training within the context of the SEAMEO Project in Archaeology and Fine Arts (SPAFA).
### 1. MONSOON ASIAN SETTING

#### 1. KEY FACTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>329,707 sq. km.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capital City</td>
<td>Ho Chi Minh City (pop. 1.8 million).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Land Use</td>
<td>14% cultivated, 50% forest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population</td>
<td>47,149,000 (41% below 15).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth Rate</td>
<td>3% per annum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Density</td>
<td>145 per sq. km.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Life Expectancy</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. PHYSICAL SETTING

**Situation**

![Map of Vietnam and neighboring regions](image-url)

*Fig. 220 Vietnam - Regional Setting 1: 30 million.*
The Socialist Republic of Vietnam is situated between latitudes 8 30 N and 23 30 N. The capital city, Ho Chi Minh City, formerly Saigon (pop. 1.8 million), is situated at latitude 10 53 N. The former capital, Hanoi, is situated at latitude 21 5 N. The total land area of the country is 329,707 sq. km., and it is bounded by China (north), Laos, Thailand and Kampuchea (west), the Gulf of Siam (southwest), the South China Sea (southeast), and the Gulf of Tonkin (east).

Geology, Relief and Drainage

Geologically, Vietnam is built around a resistant crystalline massif of great age that forms the Annamite Highlands (south of the Song Huong River). The fractured rocky coastline is formed by the northeast edge of the Sunda Platform. In the north, the mountains and plateaux of the Plain of Tonkin comprise sandstone, limestone and igneous rocks. The Annamite Highlands, which form the boundary between Vietnam and Kampuchea, are composed of crystalline sandstone overlaid with basaltic lavas. The southern lowlands largely comprise ancient alluvial deposits overlaid by recent alluvial deposits carried downstream by the Mekong. The Ca Mau Peninsula, which projects southwestwards into the Gulf of Siam, is being extended approximately 100 m. per annum.

Physically, Vietnam comprises five areas: the Tonkin Lowlands, a broad alluvial plain crossed by the Red River, the Song Thai Binh River, the Black River and other watercourses; the Northern Highlands and Plateaux of Tonkin, which encircle the Tonkin Lowlands on the north, west and southwest; the Annamite Highlands, which run from north to south and form the backbone of the country, containing several peaks over 2,000 m. including Ngoc Linh (2,598 m.) and Chu Yang Sin (2,405 m.); the Central Plain of Annam, a narrow discontinuous belt of lowlands separated by projecting spurs of hills; and the Cochin Lowlands, which comprise the Mekong Delta and the Ca Mau Peninsula.

In the north, the East and West Tonkin Mountains are drained by the Chey, Gam and Cau Rivers, and the Black River (Song Po) respectively. Both discharge into the Gulf of Tonkin via the Red River Delta, which covers almost 15,000 sq. km. and is subject to seasonal flooding. In the south, the Mekong drains Kampuchea, Laos, Thailand and the Chinese provinces of Yunnan and Tibet, before discharging into the South China Sea via the massive Mekong Delta, which covers almost 38,000 sq. km.
Climate

Vietnam experiences a tropical monsoon type of climate modified by relief. In the north of the country, temperatures are uniformly high in the summer, averaging 29°C in the Tonkin Lowlands. Winter temperatures average 16°C. Mean annual precipitation averages 1,500 mm. but is erratic and varies from year to year. During the Southwest Monsoon (June-September) rain falls mainly as drizzle (known locally as 'crachin'). In parts of the West Tonkin Highlands and the Annamite Highlands, mean annual precipitation exceeds 4,000 mm. Between July and September, the northern coastline is often battered by typhoons. Winter months are often dry in lowland areas. In the south of the country, temperatures are uniformly high all the year round, averaging 30°C in the summer and 27°C in the winter. Mean annual precipitation exceeds 1,500 mm. in most areas, falling mainly during the Southwest Monsoon (June-September). Between October and November, the southern coastline is occasionally battered by typhoons. In general, mean annual precipitation decreases southwards from Da Nang (2–3,000 mm.) to Cape Patarin (below 1,000 mm.). Hue, the site of the former imperial capital, experiences the highest mean annual precipitation in Vietnam, averaging 2,800 mm. of which 725 mm. falls in November during the typhoon season. The lowland areas of Vietnam are frost-free all the year round.

Earthquake and Volcanic Activity

Vietnam lies in a low frequency earthquake zone. There are no active volcanoes in the country.

Vegetation

In areas where mean annual precipitation exceeds 1,500 mm. tropical evergreen forest predominates below 800 m. In drier lowland areas, where mean annual precipitation is less than 1,500 mm. or soils are particularly porous, deciduous forest and savannah are widespread. Tropical grass (Imperatorkylindrica), known locally as 'tranh', is widely used for thatch. Above 800 m. coniferous forest predominates (Pinus melkusii and Pinus khasya). Mangrove sea swamp forest fringes the margins of the Red River Delta in the north, and the Mekong Delta and Ca Mau Peninsula in the south. Because of the use of defoliants in the Vietnam War, approximately 3 per cent of Vietnam (south of the seventeenth parallel) is deforested.
3. CULTURAL SETTING

Population

The population of Vietnam (47,149,000) comprises Vietnamese (85–90%), Chinese (3%), Khmers, Thais, Laos and various tribal peoples (Muong, Miao, Ham, Bahmer and Jarai, etc.). The average population density is 145 per sq. km., but local densities vary considerably from more than 815 per sq. km. on the Red River Delta (excluding Hanoi and Haiphong), to less than 5 per sq. km. in the upland areas of the Annamite Highlands.

FIG. 221 VIETNAM (SOUTH OF 17TH PARALLEL) — ESTIMATES OF URBAN AND RURAL POPULATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Urban ('000)</th>
<th>Rural ('000)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1950</td>
<td>3,465</td>
<td>12,659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1960</td>
<td>4,317</td>
<td>13,635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>5,318</td>
<td>14,515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td>6,481</td>
<td>15,282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>7,870</td>
<td>16,030</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Approximately 75 per cent of the rural population live in small hamlets and villages. Ho Chi Minh City (formerly Saigon), Cholon, Hanoi, Haiphong, Da Nang, Nha Trang and Hue are the principal urban settlements.

Language

Vietnamese is the official language of Vietnam. Chinese, French and English are also spoken, and there are numerous tribal dialects.

Religion

The principal religion practised in the north of the country is Mahayana Buddhism, but in the south, Taoism, in all its manifestations (ancestor worship, the worship of spirits and the worship of Vietnamese national heroes) is the principal religion. Confucianism and Roman Catholicism are also practised. Caodism (an amalgam of Christianity, Buddhism and Confucianism) and its offshoot Hoa Hao, founded in 1923, is also widely practised. Since the Communist takeover of South Vietnam in 1975, relations between the Revolutionary Government and the Buddhist monasteries have been strained. Schools and orphanages have been taken over and the reclusive 'non-productive' lives led by the monks have been criticised by the Government.
Fig. 222 Vietnam - Build

Fig. 223 Vietnam - Land Use

Fig. 224 Vietnam - Population

Fig. 225 Vietnam - Industry
4. ECONOMIC SETTING

Cultural Tourism

Prior to the reunification of Vietnam in 1975, cultural tourism was severely restricted in both the northern and southern zones of the country by the Vietnam War. More recently, limited numbers of tourists have been admitted to visit Ho Chi Minh City and Hanoi. The former Imperial Capital of Hue - severely damaged during the Tet (Mau Than Lunar New Year Festival) Offensive of 1968 - remains off-limits.

FIG. 226 VIETNAM (SOUTH OF 17TH PARALLEL) - TOURISTS AND TOURIST RECEIPTS (1968-71)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Tourists (1000)</th>
<th>Receipts (US million)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1968</td>
<td>34.2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td>61.2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1970</td>
<td>72.5</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1971</td>
<td>72.7 (1000)</td>
<td>3 (US million) dollars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. POLITICAL SETTING

Constitution and Government

The Socialist Republic of Vietnam was established on 2 July 1976, after three decades of often bitter and prolonged fighting that saw the widespread despoliation of the countryside and the destruction of towns and cities, and the slaughter of hundreds of thousands of French, American and Vietnamese peoples. The key policy-making body of the Republic is the Politburo. People's Councils (under central control) exist at provincial, municipal and district level.

For administrative purposes, the country is divided into thirty-five provinces: Lai Chau, Ha Giang, Son La, Vung Tau, Ha Tuyen, Bac Thai, Cao Lang, Son La, Vinh Phu, Ha Son Binh, Ha Binh, Quang Ninh, Hai Hung, Thanh Hoa, Ha Nam, Kinh, Thai Binh, Nghe Tinh, Binh Tri Thien, Quang Nam-De Nang, Gia Lai-Long, Thuong, Nghe Binh, Dak Lec, Thu Sang, Song Be, Tay-Ninh, Lam Dong, Kien Giang, An Giang, Long An, Dong Nai, Thuan Hai, Dong Thap, Tien Giang, Nha Giang, Cuu Long, Ben Tre and Minh Hai.

International Relations

On 20 September 1977, Vietnam was admitted as the 149th member of the United Nations (U.N.).
2. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

1. EARLY HISTORY

Archaeological excavations have confirmed that Vietnam — more especially the northern region of Tonkin — was settled at a very early date, and that it underwent a series of cultural changes in rapid succession. The earliest official records date from the seventh century B.C. and are of Chinese origin. Later records note the existence of a small tributary state named Au Lac at Co Loa, near to the present day site of Hanoi, which was absorbed into the Chinese state of Nam-Viet in the third century B.C. after the first Chinese invasion of Tonkin in 214 B.C. The invasion was led by the founder of the Middle Empire, the Emperor Shih Huang-ti, but after his fall, Nam-Viet became semi-independent until 111 B.C., when Chinese authority was re-established by General Han Wu-ti and the state was formally integrated into the Celestial Kingdom as its southernmost province of Chiao-Chih.

Thereafter, Chinese religious, philosophical, literary, artistic, social, technical and administrative practices were introduced, and written history was recorded in Chinese characters. Nonetheless, the peoples of Tonkin continued to nourish the ideal of independence, and in 39 A.D. the most celebrated revolt in Vietnamese history, led by the Trung Sisters, took place. The revolt was ruthlessly suppressed and the sisters were forced to commit suicide by drowning. A major uprising in the sixth century A.D. forced the Chinese to withdraw for more than fifty years, during which period the First Ly Dynasty flourished, but Chinese authority was again re-established and continued until the tenth century when, in 939 A.D., the Chinese were finally expelled from Tonkin and the independent Vietnamese state of Dai Viet was established by a local dynasty — the Dinh. During the Second Ly Dynasty (1010-1225 A.D.), Tonkin came under the cultural influence of the Sung Dynasty (960-1279 A.D.) and Buddhism was introduced into the country. This influence increased as the Sung were forced southwards by the Mongols, and large-scale immigration took place at this time. Simultaneously, the Vietnamese began to push southwards into Annam and came increasingly into conflict with the southern Kingdom of Champa (192-1471 A.D.).

The Chams, who settled in Annam at the beginning of the Christian era, are thought to have migrated northwards from the Indonesian archipelago via the Malay Peninsula, and brought with them the culture of India — in the form of Brahmanism, Sanskrit and the arts of sculpture and temple
Early History (cont.)

building. Thus the first dynasty of Champa was Indian, but in 336 A.D., it was briefly replaced by a Chinese dynasty established by a fugitive Chinese slave named Fam Wang. The first capital of Champa was at Champ-ura. Later it was moved northwards to Indrapura. During the third century A.D., Champa briefly came under the control of the Empire of Fu-nan (c.1st century-627 A.D.). Independence was soon regained, however, and in 270-280 A.D. Champa attacked the Chinese in Annam with the support of Fu-nan. After the fall of Fu-nan, Champa came under attack from the Sailendra Dynasty of East Java (732-860 A.D.) in the south, and the Vietnamese in the north, and in the tenth century Indrapura finally fell. Thereafter the Chams were steadily forced to retreat southwards, only once rallying to counter-attack in the late fourteenth century, when they pushed the Vietnamese back as far as Hanoi and sacked the northern capital. Between 1402 and 1427 A.D. the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644 A.D.) briefly re-established Chinese authority in Tonkin, but were defeated by Le Loi, the founder of the Le Dynasty (1406-1738 A.D.), who thereafter stabilised relations with China by sending figures, cast in gold, of the Chinese generals who had been defeated and killed in battle, to the court of the Imperial Dragon at Peking. Under the leadership of his successor, Le Tranh-Toa, the southward expansion of Vietnam continued, and in 1471 A.D. the Kingdom of Champa finally fell.

The conquered territories of Champa were secured by the distribution of feudal estates and the settlement of landless peasants from Tonkin, but weak leadership subsequently led to the division of the country into two independent and mutually hostile fiefdoms in the sixteenth century. The boundary dividing the two fiefdoms corresponded closely with the seventeenth parallel. To the north, the Trinh clan ruled Tonkin, while to the south, the Nguyen clan ruled Annam and, later, the former Khmer territory of Cochinchina. Vietnam was to remain divided until the beginning of the nineteenth century.

2. COLONIAL HISTORY

European interest in Vietnam originated in the early sixteenth century. The first to appear were the Portuguese and the French, who were followed in turn by the Dutch and the British. Their primary interests were trade and missionary work, and in the latter the French were particularly successful, so that by the end of the eighteenth century they had established the largest centre of Roman Catholicism on the mainland of
Colonial History (cont.)

Southeast Asia, which subsequently led to the direct intervention of the French into Vietnamese affairs and the establishment of French 'protectorates' in Tonkin and Annam, and the colonisation of Cochín-China a century later.

At the end of the eighteenth century, Vietnam was reunified after a thirty year struggle led by the Tay Son Movement, which defeated the ruling clans of Tonkin and Annam and Cochín-China. The victory of the Movement was brief, however, and the Nguyen clan, led by Nguyen Phuoc Anh who subsequently ruled as the Emperor Gia-Long and founded the Nguyen Dynasty (1802-1945), soon re-established their authority with the assistance of the French Bishop of Annam supported by a number of soldiers of fortune. The death of several French missionaries later provided the opportunity for Napoleon III to send a punitive expedition to Vietnam in 1858, and four years later, in 1862, Vietnam ceded to France part of Cochín-China. Thence, by a series of treaties signed in 1867, 1874, 1884 and 1885, Cochín-China became a colony and Tonkin and Annam became protectorates. Under the provisions of the Sino-French Treaty of 1885, the Empire of Annam (including Tonkin) ceased to be a tributary to China. In 1899, Vietnam, Cambodia (which had become a French protectorate in 1863) and Laos (to which French protection had been extended in 1893) became equal partners within the Indo-Chinese Union, administered by a Governor-General from Hanoi. The former Imperial Capital at Hue was abandoned in 1874 following an abortive attempt on the life of the French Resident-General.

3. MODERN HISTORY

In 1940, Vietnam was occupied by the Japanese and used as a base for military operations in Malaya, and a year later, with the tacit approval of the Japanese, a nominally nationalist coalition of revolutionary, nationalist and Communist organisations, known as the Vietminh League, was founded by Ho Chi Minh, at Hanoi. On 9 March 1945, the Japanese interned the French administration and proclaimed the 'independence' of Indo-China. Five months later, they allowed the Vietminh League to seize power, dethrone the Emperor, Bao Dai, and establish the Republic of Vietnam (including Tonkin, Annam and Cochín-China) with Hanoi as the capital. However, a month later, following the defeat of Japan in the Pacific War (1942-45), the French returned and re-established their authority in Cochín-China, and on 6 March 1946, a cease-fire was
negotiated and a preliminary convention was signed in Hanoi between the French High Commissioner and President Ho Chi Minh by which France recognised '...the Democratic Republic of Vietnam as a free state within the Indo-Chinese Federation...'. Later conferences at Dalat and Fontainebleau to draft a definitive independence agreement failed to reach agreement, however, and on 19 December 1946, the Vietminh League launched a major assault on Hanoi. An agreement signed by then emperor Bao Dai on behalf of Vietnam recognised the independence of Vietnam within the French Union, and certain sovereign powers were forthwith transferred to Vietnam. Others remained partly under French control until the signing of the Paris Agreement of 29 December 1954, which completed the transfer of sovereignty to Vietnam, following the bitter defeat of the French at Dien Bien Phu earlier in the year, and the de facto division of Vietnam into two separate countries under the Geneva Convention of 21 July 1954. National elections, scheduled to take place in July 1956, never took place, and the boundary between the north (under the control of President Ho Chi Minh) and the south (under the control of General Ngo Diem) hardened into a permanency which was to last for more than twenty years.

Communist subversion in South Vietnam began in 1959, and nourished by a growing antagonism towards the corrupt Diem administration, guerilla activity rapidly spread. In 1960, a military coup came near to toppling the administration, but was crushed. Three years later, Diem was murdered during a second military coup, and thereafter United States military aid, which began seriously in 1961, increased rapidly until, in 1965, the momentous decision to commit U.S. ground forces was made by President Kennedy in an attempt to achieve a quick military solution. However, like the French before them, the Americans were to taste the bitterness of defeat and in 1972, after seven years which divided the peoples of the United States and devastated the countryside of Vietnam, President Nixon began to withdraw American forces from the country as part of his Vietnamisation policy. Increasingly the burden of fighting the war was placed upon the shoulders of the South Vietnamese Regular Army (ARVN) until The Paris Agreement of 27 January 1973 officially ended the Vietnam War. The International Commission of Control and Supervision (ICCS) proved incapable of maintaining the peace, and on 30 April 1975 the Government of South Vietnam fell. Following nationwide elections on 25 April 1976, Hanoi declared the formal reunification of the country and the Socialist Republic of Vietnam was established on 2 July 1976.
Archaeological excavations have confirmed that the northern region of Vietnam — particularly the Red River Delta of Tonkin — was settled from a very early date, and that the area underwent a number of cultural changes before the beginning of the Christian era. Numerous finds, including rudimentary flaked stone tools and sophisticated polished stone tools of Paleo- and Mesolithic origin, have been unearthed at Mount Do and Hoa-Binh respectively. Weapons and tools of polished stone and, less commonly, bone, of Early Neolithic origin, have been discovered in the limestone caves at Bac-Son, near Lang Son.

Although the exact date of the beginnings of the Bronze Age in Tonkin is uncertain, Chinese sources note the existence of a flourishing Bronze Age culture at Dong-Son as early as the fourth century B.C. Finds include bronze fastenings, knives, armour, axes, digging tools and, most notably, drums. The drums, which are the prototypes of a widespread cult instrument later found throughout Southeast Asia and southern China, are decorated with geometric motifs and scenes of everyday life and illustrate Dong-Sonian dwellings — built on stilts and provided with boat-shaped roofs.

Meanwhile, the southern region of Vietnam was influenced by the southern Asiatic Megalithic culture, the origin of which is thought to be India, until the c.1st century A.D. However, few artifacts have survived to the present day — apart from massive stone megaliths — and little is known of the period. Of the succeeding Fu-nan Empire (c.1st century A.D. - 627 A.D.), various objects have been unearthed at Oc-Eo near Rach-Gia in the Mekong Delta, including a number of western origin: a gold coin of Antoninus Pius dated 152 A.D. and Sassanid seals. The remains of a large rectangular enclosing wall and numerous small buildings indicate that Oc-Eo was a port of considerable importance on the trade route between India and China, with buildings of stone, as well as wooden dwellings built on stilts. Aerial photography of the site has indicated the outline of an extensive system of canals linking Oc-Eo with other sites further inland.

Contemporary with the Dong-Sonian and Fu-nan cultures of northern and southern Vietnam, are the Annamese sites at Lach Truong in Thanh Hoa.
province and Sa-Huynh in Guang Ngai province. At the former, numerous vaulted brick tombs dating from the 1st-3rd centuries A.D. have been discovered, together with funerary objects which indicate Near Eastern, Indo-Hellenistic and Sino-Vietnamese influences. At the latter, funerary urns and other relics have been unearthed.

2. ARCHITECTURAL

Geography has to a great extent dictated the historical evolution of the art and architecture of Vietnam: in the northern provinces of Tonkin, the influence of the Chinese was predominant for more than a thousand years, whilst in the southern provinces of Annam and Cochin-China, Indian and later Western influences were predominant.

Four periods of varying distinctness in the development of the art and architecture of Vietnam are generally recognised:

1. Chinese Period (Tonkin): 111 B.C.-938 A.D.
   a) Later Han (111 B.C.-39 A.D.)
   b) Later Han and Six Dynasties (43-544 A.D.)
   c) Sui, T'ang and Five Dynasties (603-938 A.D.)

2. Indianised Period (Annam and Cochin-China):
   a) Fu-nam (c.1st century-627 A.D.)
   b) Champa (proto-Khmer) (192-1471 A.D.)

   a) Ngo (Capital, Co-Loa)(939-944 A.D.)
   b) Period of Anarchy (945-967 A.D.)
   c) Dinh (Capital, Hoa-Lu) (968-999 A.D.)
   d) Former Le (Capital, Hoa-Lu) (981-1030 A.D.)
   e) Ly (Capital, Thong Long now Hanoi) (1010-1225 A.D.)
   f) Tran (Capital, Thang Long until 1396 A.D. then Tay-Do) (1225-1400 A.D.)
   g) Ho (Capital, Tay-Do) (1400-1497 A.D.)
   h) Later Tran (Capital, Thang Long) (1407-1413 A.D.)
   i) Ming (1413-1427 A.D.)
   j) Le (Capital, Dong-Kinh now Hanoi) (1428-1738 A.D.)
   N.B. Northern (Trinh) and Southern (Nguyen) Courts under the nominal suzerainty of Le (Northern Capital, Dong-Kinh. Southern Capital, Thu-Dinh now Hue).
   K) Tay-Son (Capital, Phu Xuan) (1788-1820 A.D.)

4. Western Period (Tonkin, Annam and Cochin-China): 1802-1945 A.D.
   a) Nguyen (Capital, Hue) (1802-1945 A.D.)

1. Fourth period of Chinese domination 1413-1427 A.D. (See item 3(i)).
Building Types

The surviving monuments of Vietnam represent only a small proportion of the nation's original architectural heritage. During the thousand year long period in which the northern provinces of Tonkin comprised China's southernmost province of Chiao-Chih, the area centred on the Red River Delta was more Chinese in character than many of the northern and western provinces of Sinkiang, Kansu and Chinghai. But of the wooden palaces, pagodas, temples and public buildings constructed by the Chinese before c.1000 A.D. nothing has survived - indeed the only structures to survive from the period are barrel-vaulted tumuli built of baked brick and sandstone. The reasons for this are twofold: firstly, the biodegradable nature of the materials used in their construction (wood, unbaked brick, etc.); and secondly, the wave of destruction which followed in the wake of the edict prohibiting the practice of Buddhism issued by the Emperor Wu-Tsung in 845 A.D. In consequence, the earliest surviving examples of Chinese building types date, not from the Chinese period, but from the ensuing Vietnamese period, during which Chinese prototypes were adapted to local requirements in the northern region of Tonkin. Under the patronage of the Ly Dynasty (1010-1225 A.D.), Buddhism flourished at Thong Long (Hanoi), and the period is generally considered by scholars to be the 'golden period' in the development of Vietnamese culture. The principal building types to survive from the period are: pagodas, sanctuaries (dinh), temples, palaces and gardens, bridges and fortifications. The successors to the Ly, the Tran (1225-1400 A.D.) and the Le (1428-1788 A.D.) dynasties, are perhaps better remembered for their wood and stone carvings.

The earliest surviving remains in Vietnam are the 7-10th century Cham temples (kalans) at My-Son, Don-Duong, Binh-Dinh, Bhadresvara, Ta-Ban, Po-Rome and Po-Nagar in Annam. Constructed of baked brick and sandstone, the temples, which are of both Buddhist and Hindu (Brahmanic) origin, reflect the influence of Kushan India (c.50-7th century A.D.). From the late 15th century A.D. onwards, following the fall of Champa in 1471 A.D., Annam came increasingly under the influence of the Vietnamese and Chinese building types became common, particularly at Thux-Van (Hue), the capital of the Southern Court of Nguyen (1428-1788 A.D.), which was to become the first capital of reunified Vietnam in 1802 A.D.

1. The oldest known wooden structure known to survive in China is the 9th century Po-Kuan-Sau Temple in Shansi. It is not known whether it survived the upheaval of the Cultural Revolution of 1966.
During the first fifty years of the Nguyen dynasty (1802-1945 A.D.), which corresponds with the period of Western, particularly French, influence, the Nguyen Emperors constructed numerous palaces, tombs, pagodas and citadels at the Imperial capital of Hue. Despite the events of 1947 and 1968, Hue remains the most important site dating from the period. Hanoi and Saigon are built in the French colonial style.

a) Fortifications:

The earliest fortifications - small fortlets constructed of stone - were built by the Chinese in the sixth century A.D. the seaward approaches to Hanoi at Chiao-chou in the Red River Delta. Later, more sophisticated and extensive fortifications, comprising a series of walled enclosures containing palace buildings - pavilions, temples, pagodas and gardens - surrounded by moats and entered via causeways and ornate gateways, were constructed. Outwith the People's Republic of China, they are amongst the largest and most important of their kind. Examples of particular note are situated at Hanoi, Thanh-Hoa and Hue.

b) Bridges:

The oldest surviving bridge in Vietnam is situated at Say-Son in Sonrai province. Dating from the c.10th century, it is constructed of stone with a wooden superstructure of more recent origin. Few such bridges have survived intact to the present day, however, the majority being either swept away during floods or deliberately destroyed by military action.

c) Palaces, Pavilions, Sanctuaries (Dinh) and Temples:

Externally, palaces, pavilions, sanctuaries (dinh) and temples (Confucian, Buddhist and Hero Cult), constructed in the Chinese and later Sino-Vietnamese styles, are difficult to differentiate, each being single-storeyed, rectangular on plan, and having a heavy, overhanging tiled roof supported by a system of brackets and wooden columns. Non-load bearing panels of either wooden shutters or baked or unbaked brick faced with lime stucco form the external walls, and the whole structure is

1. The bridge is thought to be modelled on the Flower Bridge at Kweilin in Kwangsi province (c.9th century A.D.).
Building Types (cont.)

placed on a raised brick or stone platform. Internally, regularly spaced wooden columns support ornately carved, stepped beams and brackets, between which span decorative panels and folding screens. There are no windows or heating provisions. Furnishings and fittings vary according to the use of the building, temples having ornately carved cult vessels, images and altars. As a generalisation, it can be said that examples of these building types are more massive and monumental in character, and at the same time more austere
decorated, in the northern region of Tonkin than in the central and southern regions of Annam and Cochinchina. The oldest and most important examples, such as the Temple of the Trung Sisters, the Temple of the Recumbent Elephant, the Temple of Literature and the Quan-Thanh Temple, are all situated at Hanoi and date from the 11th century A.D. Unique among the temples of Vietnam is the miniature Quan-Am Temple, dedicated to the Goddess Quan-Am in the mid-11th century, which stands on a single stone pillar in the centre of a square-shaped ornamental pool. A stone staircase provides access to the temple. However, of the 11th century Royal Palace at Hanoi, only the Kinh-Thien Terrace, with its celebrated dragon staircase, and miscellaneous subsidiary structures (pavilions, gazebos, bridges, etc.) has survived. The principal 19th century examples surviving at Hue are the Dien Tho Cu-ig (Queen Mother's Palace) (1803), The Mieu (Temple of the Emperors) (c.1820), Quang Minh Dien (Princes' Palace) (1810-1947), and Tinh Minh Dien' (Princesses' Palace) (1810-1947).

d) Pagodas:

Whereas Chinese and Sino-Vietnamese temples are usually associated with the practice of Confucianism, Buddhism or the cult of ancestor and hero worship, pagodas are wholly dedicated to the practice of Buddhism. The earliest surviving examples date from the period of the Ly dynasty (1010-1225 A.D.), during which Buddhism was revived and flourished under the patronage of the Court at Thong-Long (Hanoi). Later examples are found in the vicinity of Hue. Constructed of baked brick and stone, they are generally octagonal on plan and rise as high as fourteen storeys. Examples of note include the Minh-Thai Pagoda (c.13-17th

1. The temple has been rebuilt many times, the last occasion being in 1955.
2. Not to be confused with the Burmese pagoda (zedi) building type.
3. The upper storeys are often only representational and do not correspond with a full storey height.
Building Types (cont.)

century) and Van-Thuc Pagoda (1957 A.D.), both of which are situated in Bac-Ninh province; Keo (Than-Quan) Pagoda (c.11th century), Thai-Binh province; Pho-Minh Pagoda (c.14th century), Nam-Dinh province; and Thien-Mu Pagoda (1601 A.D.), Hue.

e) Royal Tombs:

The Royal Tombs of the Nguyen Dynasty (1802-1945 A.D.) are all situated in the vicinity of the Imperial Capital of Hue. Apart from the actual vault, which is situated within a rectangular, paved enclosure, the tombs comprise palaces, pavilions, temples and other buildings. Examples of note include the Royal Tombs of Gia-Long (c.1815-20 A.D.); Minh Mang (c.1841-43 A.D.); Tu Duc (c.1864-67 A.D.); and Khai Dinh, the only one within which the body is actually interred.

f) Gardens:

Gardens are associated with palaces, pavilions, temples, pagodas and tombs. The most ornate examples comprise flowerbeds, ponds, artificial islands set in lakes reached by miniature bridges, lanterns, rockeries, jardinieres, ceramic dishes for fish, terraces, gazebos and belvederes.

g) Cham Temples (Kalans):

The temples of the Chams are closely related to those of the Khmers, with whom they shared the cult of divine kingship, and comprise a principal shrine flanked by two subsidiary shrines, each having an altar set with a central cell, arranged on a square terrace. This trio of towers, known locally as a 'kalan', is the principal feature of Cham temples. Each shrine is rectangular on plan and has a stepped, pyramidal roof. Access to the central cell is via a portico located on the western face of the monument. Blind porticoes on the northern, southern and eastern faces of the monument complete the symmetry. Narrow, decorated pilasters, string-courses, tympana, and cornices add to the richness of the overall effect. Constructed of baked brick with sandstone, later terracotta, enrichments, a number of examples have survived relatively intact, such as the North Tower and Main Tower at Mi Son, and the Main Tower at Po Nagar near Nha Trang.
Seventeenth Parallel.

Demarcation Line, 22 July 1954.

Hanoi

Hue

Tourane

Binh Dinh

Nha Trang

Phan Rang

Ho Chi Minh City

Khampaouchea

Oc-Go

Fig. 227 Vietnam - Principal Historic Sites (1:6 million).
FIG. 228 VIETNAM - INVENTORY OF CLASSIFIED HISTORIC MONUMENTS SOUTH OF THE SEVENTEENTH PARALLEL (1972)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Sub-total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neolithic sites</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cham monuments</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fou-nan and Khmer monuments</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese monuments</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese monuments</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>289</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIG. 229 VIETNAM - DESCRIPTIVE INVENTORY OF DE JURE AND DE FACTO CLASSIFIED HISTORIC MONUMENTS AT THE IMPERIAL CAPITAL OF HUE AND ENVIRONS IN THUA THIEN PROVINCE (1974)

Hue

Imperial City:

1. Ngo Mon (Moon Gate)
2. Kim Thuy Kieu (Reflecting Pools)
3. Dai Trieu Nghi (Royal Reception Palace)
4. Thai Hoa Dien (Throne Palace)
5. Ta Vu (East Pavilion)
6. Huu Vu (West Pavilion)
7. The Mieu (Temple of the Emperors)
8. Hien Lam Cag (Two Storey Pavilion Gate)
9. Can Dinh (Nine Bronze Dynastic Urns)
10. Thai Mieu (Temple of the Nine Vassals)
11. Hung Mieu (Temple of the Resurrection)
12. Trieu Mieu (Temple of the Ancestors of the Hue Vassals)
13. Dien Tho Cung (Queen Mother’s Palace)
14. Thruong Sanh Cung (Palace of Longevity)
15. Thai Binh Lau (Heading Pavilion)
16. Dinh Tu Thong (North Bastion)
17. Cac Di Chi (Vestiges of Ruined Palaces)
18. Can Chanh Dien (Audience Palace)
19. Can Thanh Dien (Private Quarters)
20. Khon Thai Dien (Queen’s Palace)
21. Kien Trung Dien (Palace of Khai Dinh)

1. Institute of Archaeological Research, Saigon.
2. The statutory inventory of classified historic monuments in Vietnam is that prepared by the Ecole Francaise d'Extreme-Orient (EFEO) under the Statute of 9 March 1900 as amended. This inventory excludes the monuments at the Imperial City of Hue and the Royal Tombs in the vicinity thereof, which were the property of the Royal Family until 1955. The former are designated as 'de Jure' and the latter as 'de Facto' in the above-mentioned descriptive inventory. Also included are de facto monuments listed by the Institute for Archaeological Research since 1956. Draft legislation to consolidate the National Inventory to exclude vanished de jure monuments and include de facto monuments was overtaken by the events of 1975.
Hue (cont.)

Citadel:
1. Citadel Area, ie.
   a) Ramparts
   b) Entrance Gates and Miradors
   c) Bridges
   d) Flag Pole
   e) Holy Cannons, etc.
2. Thien Van Dai (Observation Tower)
3. Nghinh Luong Dai (Luong Tha) (River Bank Pavilion)
4. Phu Van Lau (Royal Decree Pavilion)
5. Ho Tinh Tam (Tinh Tam Lake)
6. Tanh Hu Lau (Royal Library)
7. Dien Long An (Hue Museum)

Gia Hoi:
1. Dieu De Pagoda (DJ)
2. Bao Quoc Pagoda (DJ)

Vinh-Loc District
1. Linh Thai (Cham Tower), Vinh-Hien (DJ)
2. Tuy Van Pagoda, Vinh-Hien

Huong-Tra District
1. Remains of two Cham towers, Lieu-Coc (DJ)
2. Stone Cham tympanum, Thanh-Phuoc (DJ)
3. Thuan An (North Fort, King's Bath and Vaulted Pagoda Gateway), Thai Duong Ha (DJ)
4. Num Giao (Esplanade), Huong-Tra (DJ)
5. Thien Mu (Linh Mu) Pagoda, Ha-Ninh Thuong (DJ)
6. An Lang (Royal Tomb of Duc-Duc), Thuy-Phan

Quang-Dien District
1. Cham stele and inscription, Phu-Luong (DJ)
2. Remains of Cham citadel and inscribed stele, Lai-Trung (DJ)

Phong-Dien District
1. Cham remains and sculpture, Uu-Diem (DJ)
2. Cham tympanum and linga, Trach-Pho (DJ)
3. Cham tympanum and sculpture, My-Xuyen (DJ)

Phu-Van District
1. Cham remains and inscribed pedestal, Chiet-Bi (DJ)
2. Cham stone lion, Tien-Non (DJ)
Phu-Vang District (cont.)

3. Cham remains at ancient city of K'In-Sou, Long-To (DJ)
4. Cham stone lions (pair) and altar, Phu-Xuan (DJ)

Huong-Thuy District

1. Remains of Cham tower, Luong-Van (DJ)
2. Thanh Toan (Covered Bridge), Thanh-Thuy-Chanh (DJ)
3. Tomb of Mrs. Chaigneau, Phu-Cam (DJ)
4. Tombs of Prisoners, Phu-Cam (DJ)
5. Arena(s), Nguyet-Bien (DJ)
6. Dan Nam Giao, Am Cuu Tay (DJ)
7. Tu Duc (Royal Tomb of Khien-Lang), Duong-Xuan
8. Royal Tomb of Dong Khanh
9. Long Chau Temple (Voi-Re), Nguyet Bien
10. Tu Hieu Pagoda, Duong-Xuan

Phu-Loc District

1. Quang-Nam and Hue Gateways and miscellaneous Vietnamese monuments at 'Col des Nuages', An-Nong (DJ)

Dinh-Mon District

1. Royal Tomb of Thieu Tri, Cu-Chanh

Nam-Hoa District

1. Hue Nam Palace, Hai-Cat
2. Royal Tomb of Minh Mang, An-Bang
3. Royal Tomb of Gia-Long, Dinh-Mon
4. Ngu Tam Tomb, Dinh-Mon
5. Minh Thanh Temple, Dinh-Mon
6. Gia Tranh Temple, Dinh-Mon
7. Thoai Thanh Temple, Dinh-Mon
8. Royal Tomb of Khai-Dinh, Chan-Chu

(DJ) = De Jure Classified Historic Monument.
Fig. 230 Vietnam - North Tower, Hoa Lai, Annam (10th-century) (L).
Fig. 231 Vietnam - Main Tower, Mi Son Ai, Annam (mid 10th-century) (R).

Fig. 232 Vietnam - Main Tower, Po Nagar, Nha Trang, Annam (11th-century) (L).
Fig. 233 Vietnam - Silver Tower, Binh Dinh, Annam (early 12th-century) (R).
Fig. 234 Vietnam - Hue. Contemporary map of the 19th century city of Hue, founded by Gia-Long the first Emperor of the Nguyen Dynasty who unified the country in 1802.
Fig. 235  Vietnam - Tomb of Emperor Khai-Dinh Khanh (1916-1925), Hue.

Fig. 236  Vietnam - Thien Mu Pagoda (1601), Hue.
Fig. 237 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Ngo Mon (Noon Gate).

Fig. 238 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Thai Hoa Dien (Throne Palace) and Dai Trieu Nghi (Royal Reception Terrace).
CAUSES OF DECAY

1. INTRINSIC

Location

a) Microclimate, Subsoil Conditions and Drainage

Vietnam has a tropical monsoon climate modified by relief. In general, monuments and sites located at lowland sites in the northern provinces, such as Hanoi, experience a greater variation in mean monthly temperatures, relative humidity and precipitation, than those in the central and southern provinces, such as Hue, Binh-Dinh, Nha-Trang, Phan-Rang, Ho Chi Minh City and Oc-eeo. Mean annual precipitation exceeds 1,500 mm at most sites, increasing to 4,000 mm at upland sites. Hue has the highest rainfall of any site in the country (2,800 mm per annum). Monuments and sites located in areas subject to an annual excess of precipitation over evaporation, where laterisation of the soil is relatively advanced as a result of chemical deforestation or clearance agriculture, and the subsoil is saturated and poorly drained, are liable to settlement and slippage. The northern and southern deltas of the Red River and the Mekong are subject to seasonal flooding.

Materials

a) Timber and Bamboo

Timber, bamboo and thatch have traditionally been the most widely used building materials, but because of their organic nature they are particularly subject to decay (rot and insect attack) and fire damage. Consequently, few monuments constructed of timber and timber-related materials have survived from before the nineteenth century. The principal timbers used for construction purposes and carved ornamentation are hardwoods: Lim (ironwood), used for columns, beams, purlins, etc., and elaborately carved ornamentation, originating in Tonkin and the northern provinces of Annam (Nam-Loa, Thua-Thien, Plei-Lu, etc.); Mit, a finely-grained hardwood used only in the most important building types (Royal palaces and tombs, etc.) with the finest wood carving; and Kien Kien, a medium hardwood widely used for general purposes, originating in the Nam-Loa district of northern Annam near to Hue. 1

b) Stone

Sandstone, limestone and various igneous rocks are used for a broad range of building purposes, such as foundations, paving slabs, staircases, ramps, handrails, free-standing images, sculpture, inscribed steles and tomb stones. Few monuments are, however, wholly constructed of stone (later Cham temples or 'kalans', Chinese bridges and civil engineering works, and Sino-Vietnamese fortifications and royal tombs). Porous building stones, such as sandstone and limestone, are subject to decay as a result of a) the crystallisation of salts drawn from the subsoil by capillary action, and b) the establishment of fungi, algae, moss and lichen.

c) Mud and Unbaked Brick

There are no surviving examples of monuments or sites constructed of mud (adobe) or unbaked brick.

d) Baked Brick and Terracotta

Well-baked bricks have been widely used in the construction of Cham temples and Sino-Vietnamese fortifications, temples and pagodas. Terracotta, porcelain and polychromed fireclay are used for ornamental purposes, paving and roofing. All weather particularly well, the baked brick used by the Chams at Mi-Son in Annam, for example, having survived relatively unscathed for more than one thousand years.

e) Binding Materials

Lime mortar is the principal binding material used in the construction of baked brick structures. Normally the process of decay is a slow one, but where rice husks, straw or other organic materials have been added to the lime, the process is accelerated as a result of insect attack.

f) Metal

Bronze and copper are widely used in the fabrication of free-standing images, bells and temple furnishings and fittings. Iron is widely used in the fabrication of fastenings, particularly in timber structures,
Materials (cont.)

and armatures for ornamental sculpture. Bronze disease is common.

g) Stucco and Other Finishes

Lime stucco is used as a protective finish to the majority of baked brick structures. Fungi, moss and lichen cause discolouration of the lime stucco and, where capillary action has caused the support to become saturated or the crystallisation of soluble salts to take place, cracking and spalling may occur.

h) Ornamentation

Terracotta, porcelain, glazed polychrome fireclay, glass and porcelain pieces, lacquer, copper and bronze, and gilding and mother-of-pearl inlay, are all used to ornament Sino-Vietnamese temples, pagodas, Royal palaces, tombs and ancillary structures. Terracotta, glazed polychrome fireclay and glass and porcelain pieces (pressed into wet lime stucco) weather reasonably well but suffer physical damage (vandalism). Lacquer, gilding and mother-of-pearl inlay are applied to both furniture and fittings, and more important building types, such as palaces, audience halls and tombs. Red and gold are the most frequent colours of lacquer applied to columns, beams and ornamental panels. Because of the hygroscopic natures of the support (timber or plaited bamboo or horsehair), splitting and flaking often occurs as a result of dimensional instability caused by fluctuations in relative humidity. In many instances lacquer is over-painted with oil-based paint. Corrosion and bronze disease are widespread.

i) Wall Paintings

The majority of lime stucco structures are colour washed with water-based paints of an orange or yellow ochre tint, and in some instances decorative bands of contrasting colours and small rectangular wall paintings are added. The wall-paintings, which are executed dry (secco) on a fine lime plaster ground, weather rapidly in the damp conditions prevailing in Vietnam.

Construction

a) Substructure

Foundations are traditionally shallow. Thus differential settlement and
Construction
collapse are not uncommon at sites subject to regular inundation and saturation as a result of subsoil conditions and drainage. At Mi-son, for example, a number of Cham temples are threatened with collapse as a result of more than ten years of neglect during which time a small local stream has to a great extent undermined their foundations.

b) Superstructure

In contrast to the Chinese, who used a complex system of brackets and supports, known as 'tou-kung', in the construction of timber structures, the Vietnamese developed a simplified system of stepped beams and brackets. Non-structural infill panels span between the columns which support the roof. According to tradition, two separate gangs of carpenters and woodcarvers were employed in competition thereby achieving perfect carpentry and richer ornamentation. The earliest Chinese structures are built in the monolithic system of construction (fortifications), but later the semi-circular headed arch and vault appears (tombs and bridges). The earliest surviving structures of all, the Cham monuments of Annam, built by Hindu and, later, Buddhist masons in the traditions of southern and eastern India, are constructed in the trabeated system of construction.

2. EXTRINSIC CAUSES

Actions of Man

a) Lack of Maintenance

Because of the situation prevailing since the enforced abdication of the Emperor, Bao Dai, in 1945, there has been no regular programme of maintenance in Vietnam. Despite sporadic attempts to repair individual monuments and sites suffering war damage and other causes of decay, in both of the formerly separate zones of North and South Vietnam, by the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains at Hanoi and, later, Saigon (now Ho Chi Minh City), and more recently the Institute for

Archaeological Research at Saigon, the cumulative effects of thirty years of fighting, and restricted access to field monuments and sites, shortages of trained staff and technical and financial resources, and the corresponding lack of maintenance, have collectively brought the country's heritage of monuments and sites to the very threshold of disaster.

b) Abandonment and Squatting

Warfare, both civil and international, has as its corollary the abandonment of monuments and sites and the creation of vast numbers of homeless and destitute persons for whom squatting is their only hope of finding shelter. Thus, both abandonment and squatting are major problems throughout Vietnam.

c) Robbery and Vandalism

The above mentioned observations regarding abandonment and squatting in sub-section (b) apply equally to robbery and vandalism, which are also major problems throughout Vietnam. For example, as late as October 1967, when the late Werner G. J. Knop surveyed and photographed the principal monuments at the Imperial Capital of Hue, many of the Royal palaces and ancillary structures still possessed significant quantities of furniture, sculpture, paintings, tapestries and other fittings. By December 1973, however, when UNESCO consultant, W. Brown Morton III, inspected those same structures, the contents had been removed, either destroyed or stolen and illicitly sold or exported abroad. Similarly, reports that the Chau treasure collection of the Dalat Museum, formerly housed in the temples themselves, had disappeared, were confirmed in August 1973. A second collection of Chau material, formerly the private property of the Royal Family, was removed from the Phan-ri Museum to a private home in the area for 'safekeeping' at the same time, and its present whereabouts remain unknown. Following the collapse of the South Vietnamese Government on 30 April 1975, a number of newspapers and periodicals carried reports of cultural property being shipped out of the country to the United States of America by freighter.

Actions of Man (cont.)

d) Alteration and Demolition

Monuments in regular use, particularly Buddhist temples and pagodas, are often altered and occasionally demolished and rebuilt, it being a meritorious act according to the Buddhist canon. Abandoned structures are often demolished for their materials, it being a Vietnamese tradition to build with second-hand materials to signify humility.


e) Faulty Restoration and Repair

Because the Archaeological Research Institute at Saigon was unable to attract fully qualified staff because of the low salary scales prevailing up until the events of 1975, it was unable to prepare proper programmes for the restoration and repair of monuments and sites. Accordingly, the former Ministry of Public Works, which had no technical competence in the science of conservation and over which the Institute had no jurisdiction, became the national agency responsible for overseeing contracts awarded on the basis of profitability and expediency. Thus, the standards of restoration and repair are generally very low.

f) Unauthorised Excavations

Unauthorised excavations are a particular problem at abandoned sites such as Mi-Son, Dong-Duong, Binh-Binh, Po-Rome and Po-Nagar.

g) Customary Use

The deposit of smoky, oily and greasy deposits on internal surfaces, due to the widespread use of paraffin stoves and oil lamps, is the major cause of decay arising from customary use.

h) Change of Use

In times of war, the change of use of structures is an every-day occurrence, the impact of which varies according to the particular circumstances prevailing at the time. For example, the National Museum
of Da-Nang at Tourane is reported to have been used to quarter South Vietnamese troops on at least two occasions in 1972-73. Fortunately, losses were minimal.¹

i) Urbanisation and Encroachment

One of the principal effects of the war in the countryside was the creation of vast numbers of homeless and destitute persons, many of whom flooded into the cities of Hanoi, Saigon (now Ho Chi Minh City), Haiphong, Quang-Tri, Hue, Da-Nang, Nha-Trang and Qui Nhon. The majority were housed in squatter settlements around the periphery of the cities and towns where they encroached on the settings of monuments and sites.²

j) Fire Damage

Fire is a major cause of decay of timber structures. For example, in January 1947 the Viet-Minh, led by Ho Chi Minh, set fire to the central section of the Imperial Capital of Hue. In the ensuing holocaust, only the Ngo Mon (Noon Gate), Thai Hoa Dien (Throne Palace), Huu Vu (West Pavilion), Ta Vu (East Pavilion) and Thai Binh Lau (Reading Pavilion), escaped unscathed.³

k) Pollution

Pollution is negligible.

1) War Damage

The exact extent of the damage caused by high altitude bombing and artillery fire in the northern and central provinces of Tonkin and Annam, between the commitment of United States ground forces in 1965 and the fall of the South Vietnamese Government a decade later, is unknown. As early as October 1967, concern was being expressed by

² A brief report in the U.K. periodical, 'Building Design', dated 11 February 1977, noted that Soviet architects in Leningrad had commenced work on a 'master plan for Hanoi' that will increase the city's present area two and a half fold and its population to more than a million by the year 2000.
Actions of Man (cont.)

scholars about the effects of United States policy in the pursuit of victory over North Vietnam:

'...From conversations with members of the International Control Commission in Saigon, who have regular access to Hanoi, and other available evidence gathered in Hong Kong and Paris, it appears that by far the severest threat to the cultural patrimony of North Vietnam lies in the tremendous fire power being brought to bear upon this small country. While movable art treasures, archives, etc., appear to have been well protected by evacuation to other areas, this obviously does not apply to many archaeological and historical sites in the area...'

'...North Vietnam, cradle of the Vietnamese civilisation, forms a galaxy of archaeological and historical sites...of primary cultural importance. Each bombardment of North Vietnam (whatever its target, villages, towns, rice paddies) destroys irremediably those villages which are not only witnesses' of Vietnamese civilisation, but which could clarify the prehistory and the historical beginnings of the whole of South East Asia. Thus archaeological research and all hope to learn the thousands of years of history of a people are condemned to failure forever...'

Regrettably, the Kennedy, Johnson and Nixon Administrations seem to have been either unaware of or unconcerned over the destruction of Vietnam's cultural heritage of monuments and sites, and their actions are in sharp contrast to those of the Roosevelt and Truman Administrations of World War II, which spared the ancient Japanese cities of Kyoto and Nara on the advice of Dr. Langdon Warner, Curator of the Oriental Department of the Fogg Art Museum of Harvard University. Thus, the United States launched its Tet Offensive on 31 March 1968, during the Mau Than (Lunar New Year) Festival, against the North Vietnamese Army and Viet-Cong guerillas occupying the Citadel of the Imperial Capital of Hue. The battle for Hue lasted three weeks and caused widespread damage. One eye-witness reporter, visiting Hue shortly after the battle noted:

'...After Saigon had quieted down I went to Hue, and nothing I had seen during the Second World War in the Pacific, during the Korean War, and in Vietnam either during the Indochina War

3. The so-called 'Warner List', was drawn up with the collaboration of Kojiro Tomita, Japanese Curator, Oriental Department, Boston Museum.
or since 1933 was as terrible, in point of destruction and despair, as that witnessed in this northern capital, which has often been compared to old Peking. Much of the city, particularly the old walled part known as the Citadel and including the Imperial Palace on the northern side of the Perfume River, was in complete ruins... 1

Among the many buildings affected by the bombing and shelling was the Hue Museum. Later military action in 1972 affected the Royal Tombs in the vicinity of Hue, which changed hands frequently but survived relatively undamaged. 2

Occasional Actions of Nature

a) Earthquakes and Landslides

Earthquake activity is negligible. Landslides are not uncommon in upland areas during the Southwest Monsoon (June-September).

b) Volcanic Activity

Volcanic activity is negligible

c) Flooding

In historic Lower Tonkin the delta of the Red River rarely exceeds three metres above sea level and major embankments have traditionally been built to control the flood waters which reach their height between June and October each year. In 1926 approximately one-third of the delta was flooded when the embankments broke. More recently, they have been the target of aerial bombardment and flooding has been widespread. In the southern delta of the Mekong cultivation depends entirely upon the natural flood rhythm and there is practically no controlled irrigation. Thus flooding is widespread. 3

Occasional Actions of Nature (cont.)

d) Tsunamis

Although there is no recently recorded instance of a Tsunami affecting Vietnam's long eastern coastline, the possibility exists because of the proximity of the so-called 'Ring of Fire', the girdle of active volcanoes that sweeps in a broad arc through the Indonesian and Philippines archipelagos.

e) Typhoons and Cyclones

Vietnam's long eastern coastline is subject to typhoon and cyclone damage during the 'typhoon season' which occurs in July-September in the north and September-November in the south.

Prolonged Actions of Nature

a) Precipitation, Relative Humidity, Temperature and Wind.

Precipitation, relative humidity and temperature, are the three principal physical causes of decay. The effects of heavy rainfall on monuments and sites is to a great extent dependent upon their exact location, materials and construction, as previously noted under Section 1: Intrinsic Causes of Decay (flooding, rising dampness, wet rot, corrosion, etc.), but over prolonged periods other changes of a chemical, micro-biological and biological nature also occur. The effects of these are noted in the following sub-sections (b) to (g). Physical erosion by wind-borne particulates is negligible.

b) Fungi and Mold

Fungi and mold disfigure many monuments and sites. Those constructed of hygroscopic materials (timber, lime stucco, etc.) are particularly affected. The problem is rendered acute by the almost total lack of maintenance in Vietnam previously noted in Actions of Man, sub-section (a). At the Imperial capital of Hue, which is the wettest city in Vietnam (2,800 mm per annum) the problem is of major proportions.1

c) Moss and Lichen

Moss and lichen also disfigure many monument and sites constructed of hygroscopic materials. Again, the Imperial capital of Hue is one of the most badly affected sites.  

d) Plants and Trees

Trees and plants flourish in the hot and wet conditions prevailing at monuments and sites located along Vietnam's lengthy coastal plain and on the northern and southern deltas of the Red River and the Mekong. The problem is rendered acute by the almost total lack of maintenance in Vietnam previously noted in Actions of Man, sub-section (a). For example, at the Imperial capital of Hue the moats and canals, once free of all vegetation, were until recently leased for cultivation by the Royal Family. Similarly, the terraces and gardens were overgrown because the lush tall grass has a commercial value when harvested.

e) Insects

Insect infestation is the principal cause of decay of timber and timber-based materials. Drywood termites (Kalotermitidae) and other free-flying pests, such as powder-post beetles (Lyctidae and Bostrychidae), make their homes within the timber attacked. Soil or subterranean termites (Hodotermitidae, Rhinotermitidae and Thermitidae), known locally as 'white ants', are more numerous and widespread, but need to maintain contact with the ground. Both problems are widespread in monuments located at coastal and lowland sites subject to high relative humidity. The problem is rendered acute by the almost total lack of maintenance in Vietnam previously noted in Actions of Man, sub-section (a). For example, at the Imperial capital of Hue the Am-Lang Palace, which houses the Hue Museum, has subsided because of termite damage to the columns.

Prolonged Actions of Nature (cont.)

f) Birds and Bats

Nesting birds and bats cause physical damage to brick and stone monuments by burrowing. Their excrement also causes chemical damage to copper and bronze.

g) Animals

Animal damage is negligible.
Fig. 239 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Fortifications and Chuong Duc Mon (Western Entrance Gateway for Women Only) surrounded by overgrown moat.

Fig. 241 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Hung Mieu Mon (Temple of the Resurrection Gate). Damage caused by high relative humidity and growth of moss.

Fig. 242 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Hien Non Mon (Eastern Entrance Gateway for Men Only). Damage caused by artillery fire during the Mau Than (Tet) Lunar New Year Offensive of 1968.
Fig. 243 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Tomb of Gia Long (Temple of Emperor's Second Wife). Damage to superstructure caused by artillery fire during the Mau Than (Tet) Lunar New Year Offensive of 1968.

Fig. 244 Vietnam - Imperial City, Hue. Interior of Tomb of Gia Long (Temple of the Emperor's Second Wife). Damage to superstructure and furnishings caused by artillery fire during the Mau Than (Tet) Lunar New Year Offensive of 1968.
| LOCATION | Microclimate
| Subsoil Conditions
| Drainage
| Timber and Bamboo
| Stone
| Mud and Unbaked Brick
| Baked Brick and Terracotta
| Binding Materials
| Metal
| Stucco and Other Finishes
| Ornamentation and Wall Painting
| MATERIALS |
| Substructure
| Superstructure
| CONSTRUCTION |
| Lack of Maintenance
| Abandonment and Squatting
| Robbery and Vandalism
| Alteration and Demolition
| Faulty Restoration and Repair
| Unauthorised Excavations
| Customary Use
| Change of Use
| Urbanisation and Encroachment
| Fire Damage
| Pollution
| War
| ACTIONS OF MAN |
| Earthquakes and Landslides
| Volcanic Activity
| Flooding
| Tsunamis
| Typhoons and Cyclones
| OCCASIONAL ACTIONS OF NATURE |
| Precipitation
| Relative Humidity
| Temperature
| Wind
| Fungi and Mold
| Moss and Lichen
| Plants and Trees
| Insects
| Birds and Bats
| ANIMALS |
| EXTRINSIC CAUSES |
1. HISTORICAL EVOLUTION OF GUIDING PRINCIPLES

The revelation and subsequent conservation of the archaeological and architectural heritage of Indo-China - Kampuchea (formerly Cambodia), Laos and Vietnam - was a uniquely French achievement involving some of the greatest nineteenth and twentieth century scholars.

The earliest European visitors to Vietnam were the Portuguese Jesuit missionaries who, from the beginning of the sixteenth century when they first preached the Gospel in Tonkin, until the late eighteenth century when they were eventually expelled from the country, attempted with varying degrees of success to convert the inhabitants to Roman Catholicism. The first permanent mission was established at Fai-Po in 1615, where Father de Rhodes laboured for twenty years to produce the first Annamese-Latin dictionary published in 1645. The missionaries' accounts of their experiences, which were often useful and workmanlike, reached Europe through private letters, many of which were summarised by C. Chaulmer in his 'Tableau de l'Asia', published in 1655. Other accounts were published by Cristoforo Borri (1631), Father Cadim (1645), Father Tissanier (1663) and the brothers Jean-Baptiste and Daniel Tavernier (1667). On the basis of this material, several British writers compiled accounts of Vietnam, in particular the northern province of Tonkin where British merchantmen continued to trade until the end of the seventeenth century, of which those of Samuel Baron (1687) and William Dampier (1688) are of particular note.

French intervention in Vietnamese affairs dates from 1787, when French troops were landed in support of Nguyen Phuoc Anh who, as the Emperor Gia-Long, founded the Nguyen Dynasty (1802-1945) at Hue. In 1858, the Emperor Napoleon III seized Da-nang, and within a decade the colony of Cochinchina was established. Following an attempt on the life of the French Resident-General in 1874, the Imperial capital at Hue was abandoned and French authority was confirmed under the provisions of the treaties of 1874, 1884 and 1885. During this period French antiquarian interest in Vietnam increased rapidly. In 1785, the L'Ecole des langues d'orient was founded at Paris, and from 1814 onwards, the College de France taught Chinese and Sanskrit. Taking as his model the Asiatick Society of Bengal, founded by Sir William Jones at Calcutta in 1784, Ernest Renan founded the Societe Asiatique de Paris in 1822.
Historical Evolution of Guiding Principles (cont.)

antiquarian society to be established in Vietnam was the Societe des etudes Indochinois, which was founded at Saigon in 1865. The Association des Amis du Vieux-Hue was founded fifty years later, in 1914, by Pere Cadiere.

From the late nineteenth century onwards, French scholars and antiquarians, using Chinese, Vietnamese, Sanskrit and, later, Champa texts, began to piece together the history of Vietnam. The first to recognise the importance of the Chinese tombs scattered around Hanoi and the ancient cities of Co-loa and Hoa-lu in the history of Vietnam, was Gustave Dumontier, the Government Interpreter, who arrived at Hanoi in 1886. Shortly afterwards he arranged for the photographer Vildieu to record the pagodas of Hanoi. The first Cham monuments were discovered in 1885 and seven years later, in 1892, the Cham site at Tourane was excavated. The translation of Champa texts by eminent scholars, such as Auguste Barth and Abel Bergaigne, and gifted amateur antiquarians, such as Etienne Aymonier, the French Resident in Cambodia, threw further light on the history of the Indianised kingdom which was gradually absorbed by Vietnam between the tenth and nineteenth century.

The need to establish a permanent body to coordinate the study of the colony's history and heritage of monuments and sites was becoming evident by this time, and in 1893 the L'Ecole francaise d'extreme-orient (EFEO) was founded at Saigon by Auguste Barth, Abel Bergaigne and Louis Breal. A year later, the EFEO was transferred to Hanoi by Paul Doumer, founder of the Geographical and Geological Services of Indo-China. In 1900, it became the Directorate of Museums and Historical Monuments of Indo-China. Between 1901 and 1915, Henri Parmentier, the Head of the Archaeological Service of the EFEO, catalogued two hundred and twenty nine groups of Cham monuments and remains in Annam, and in 1922, he published his classic 'Les sculptures cham es au Musee de Tourane'. Beginning in 1913, Parmentier also excavated and emptied, the Chinese tombs at Quang-yan and Bac-ninh. Jean-Yves Cleays and Olav Janse continued his researches at Lac-y (Vinh-yan). Later, the Imperial tombs at Hue were recorded by Charles Demasur and Jean de Mecquenem; and the Dinh-bang (Bac-ninh) was recorded by Charles Batteur, who later restored the Temple of Literature and the Pagoda of the Single Pillar at Hanoi.1

1. Destroyed in 1954.
Historical Evolution of Guiding Principles (cont.)

A number of important sites were also discovered as a result of methodical surveys undertaken by EFE0 staff during those years, including the tower stupa of Binh-son, the frescoes at Thien-khe cave, and the Mac Dynasty (1527-92) fortifications constructed to keep the Chinese at bay in the sixteenth century. The most important discovery, however, was the Dong-son site at Than-hoa, where pottery, bronzes and other finds were unearthed in 1924.¹

From 1937 onwards, under the direction of Louis Bezacier, the EFE0 proceeded to restore a number of monuments in Vietnam, including the Ninh-phuc pagoda at But-than, the Van-phuc pagoda at Phat-tich, and Gia-long's Can-than Palace at Hue.² Simultaneously, Louis Malleret, Honourable Director of the EFE0, was excavating in Trans-bassac where, between 1938 and 1945, he identified the first vestiges of the Fou-nan kingdom at Oc-eo.³ The events of 1942-45 and the ensuing independence movement put an abrupt end to the work of the EFE0 in Vietnam, and in 1950 the responsibility for conserving the nation's heritage of cultural property was transferred to the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains.

From 1947 until 1954, when the Geneva Convention confirmed the de facto division of Vietnam into two independently governed zones, the country was in an almost continuous state of war. Nonetheless, the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains attempted to protect the many important monuments in and around Hanoi, appealing to the military forces to avoid their destruction whenever possible, and documenting them as far as the conditions permitted. Following the signing of the Geneva Convention, the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains was transferred to the southern zone, and in 1958 it was merged with the Institute for Archaeological Research at Saigon. Between 1956 and 1964, the Institute for Archaeological Research concentrated upon the compilation

1. The Dong-son civilisation, which is Indonesian in origin, flourished in Vietnam from the seventh century B.C. until the second century A.D. Finds illustrate Chinese and Hellenistic influences and are found in Malaysia, Cambodia, Laos, Burma and Indonesia.
3. Fou-nan is the earliest Indianised kingdom mentioned in the Chinese histories of Indo-China dating from the first to the sixth century A.D. Finds at Oc-eo include brick foundations, wooden piles and terra-cotta reliefs, similar sites found at U Thong and Dong Si Maha Pot in Thailand in 1964 confirming conquest by Fou-nan in third century A.D. as recorded in Chinese histories.
4. Vien Khao Co.
of a national inventory of the significant historic remains south of the seventeenth parallel. In all two hundred and eighty nine remains were surveyed and registered. The Institute for Archaeological Research also undertook the restoration of many monuments – with varying degrees of success – at Hue, including the Esplanade of Heaven, the Main Gate to the Imperial City and the Tombs of the Nguyen Emperors. Many Cham monuments were also restored, including the Cam Towers at Qui Nhon, and in 1953 a depository for Cham remains was constructed at Kalong near Saigon. However, from 1965 onwards, following the commitment of United States ground forces to the war which from 1957 onwards had been increasing in both scale and ferocity, the work of the Institute of Archaeological Research was largely confined to Saigon and Hue. The occupation of Hue by the Vietcong in 1968, and the subsequent assault on the Citadel by southern Vietnamese military forces supported by a massive artillery barrage, in the wake of the Mau Than Lunar New Year festival, caused widespread damage and the destruction of an estimated thirty to fifty per cent. of the monuments on the site. Thereafter, until the fall of the Government of the Republic of South Vietnam on 30 April 1975, the work of the Institute of Archaeological Research steadily decreased as military action increased and its own budget decreased.

Meanwhile, in the northern zone of Vietnam, following the transfer of the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains to Saigon, the responsibility for conserving the nation’s heritage of cultural property north of the seventeenth parallel passed to the Department of Museums and Antiquities Preservation of the Government of the Democratic Republic of North Vietnam at Hanoi.

Vietnam was formally reunified as the Socialist Republic of Vietnam on 2 July 1976 and the two conservation services are believed to have been merged to form a single national conservation agency.

4. POLICY AND PROGRAMMES

National Conservation Policy

The former Republic of South Vietnam did not have a national conservation policy and the allocation of scarce scientific, financial and manpower
resources was done on an ad hoc basis up until the fall of the government in April 1975. The present situation is unknown.

Conservation Programmes

Between 1967 and 1973, the Institute completed twenty-two conservation projects. In 1973, three major programmes were announced:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Programme</th>
<th>Proposed Date of Completion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Restoration of Imperial City of Hue</td>
<td>1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoration of Royal Tombs at Hue</td>
<td>1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restoration of Historic City of Hai An</td>
<td>1978</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975 brought the above-mentioned three major programmes to a premature end.

Vietnamese House Project

On 22 December 1973, the Ethnological Research Centre at the Danang Museum formally opened its doors for the first time. Located in a large private villa with an extensive garden and staffed principally by Montagnards, the Centre included among its collection of items illustrative of the traditional ways of life of the numerous ethnic minorities, eight houses collected under the Vietnamese House Project.

3. INTERNATIONAL TECHNICAL COOPERATION

International Government Agencies

Up until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, the southern zone of the country was a member of the United Nations (UN) and its sister agency the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), and in 1970 the UNESCO was requested to send an expert mission to Hue to examine the conditions of the surviving...

---

monuments and prepare a restoration programme to be phased over a number of years. In 1971 and in 1973, Mr. W. Brown Morton III, an architect-restorer employed by the United States National Park Service on secondment to the International Centre for Conservation at Rome from 1972 until 1975, visited the Imperial Capital at Hue and the Royal Tombs in the local environs.1

The Government of the Republic of Vietnam was also a member of the South East Asian Ministers of Education Organisation (SEAMEO) and the Cultural and Social Centre for the Asian and Pacific Region (ASPAC). As a member of the former, it was an enthusiastic supporter of the Applied Research Centre in Archaeology and Fine Arts (ARCAFA) Project Development Office (APDO) planned to be permanently based in Phnom Penh.2

International Non-Government Agencies

Up until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, there was neither a national committee for the International Council of Museums (ICOM) nor for the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS). However, the advice of the ICOM Regional Agency in Asia was sought in connection with the establishment of the Ethnological Research Centre at the Da-Nang Museum.3

Private Foundations

Under the provisions of its Art and Archaeology Programme in Southeast Asia, The Ford Foundation supported a number of projects in the Republic of Vietnam up until the events of April 1975. In progress at that time were grants to the National Library, Saigon, for the micro-filming of historical documents and Cham documents. A Filipino museum display specialist had also established an ethnographic gallery at the National Museum, Saigon. Three Vietnamese trainees employed on the Mekong Archaeological Survey, under the direction of the Otago University, New Zealand, became refugees as a result of the events of April 1975 and are now in the United States of America. Nonetheless, the Survey achieved the

survey stage of its goal and several sites were identified, but none was important enough to warrant delaying the proposed damming of the Mekong.
1. LEGISLATION

Legislation relative to the classification, conservation and protection of cultural property in Vietnam is almost entirely French in origin, dating from the period 1900-1940. Constitutional changes and new legislation regulating the exportation of cultural objects have amended the law over the last thirty years, but in general it remains unchanged from the days when Vietnam - together with Cambodia and Laos - formed the French colony of Indo-China.

The first statute to extend legislative protection to '...monuments and objects having an historic or artistic interest...' in Vietnam was the Statute of 9 March 1900. Five years later, the Statute of 15 April 1905 provided for the classification of the said monuments and objects. The principal law relative to the classification and protection of historic monuments in Vietnam was introduced by the Statute of 15 February 1925, which promulgated the Decree of 23 December 1924 to extend to Indo-China, subject to terms and conditions, the French domestic Law of 31 December 1913. The Statute of 30 April 1925 regulated the precise application of the Decree of 23 December 1924, and the Statute of 11 July 1925 regulated the classification, conservation and protection of monuments under the Decree of 23 December 1924. Statutes particularly related to the classification and listing of monuments were enacted on 16 May 1925, 29 April 1930, 1 October 1932, 19 July 1935 and 24 February 1938. Other statutes relate to the sale and exportation of art and archaeological objects from historic monuments; and the protection of

1. Decret du 14 fevrier 1925, No.34/GD, Relatif a la protection des bien-culturels du Viet Nam.
natural monuments and sites.\(^1\)

The majority of the above-mentioned Statutes, Decrees and Laws, etc., remained in force in the southern zone of Vietnam until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975. The situation prevailing in the northern zone of Vietnam from 1954 until the reunification of the country in 1976 is unknown, and the undernoted outline of conservation legislation is restricted to the situation prevailing in the southern zone of Vietnam until 1975 only.

Under article 1 of the Law of 31 December 1913 — as extended to Indo-China by the Decree of 23 December 1924, regulated by the Statutes of 15 and 30 April and 11 July 1925, and subsequently amended by the independent Government of the Republic of Vietnam between 1954 and 1975 — hereinafter referred to as the 'July 1925 Statute', both immovable and movable cultural property of artistic or historic interest may be declared to be an historic monument in the public interest, subject to the following provisions:

**Immovable Cultural Property**

Under article 2 of the July 1925 Statute, immovable cultural property of historic or artistic interest may be classified as an historic monument, in whole or in part, in the public interest. Any site, including such surrounding land as is necessary to insulate and protect the said site, which contains prehistoric formations or strata; the remains of ancient buildings; and objects of artistic, archaeological or religious character; may be classified; the owner of the immovable cultural property and the head of the local administration are both notified of the proposed classification.

Under articles 4 and 5 of the July 1925 Statute, the consent of the owner of the immovable cultural property is required before the proposed classification may be confirmed. However, in the absence of such consent, the State may declare the immovable cultural property to be a classified monument, in which case compensation may be claimed for any injury or loss arising therefrom.

Under article 9 of the July 1925 Statute, no immovable cultural property so classified may be destroyed, removed, restored, repaired or altered without prior permission.

Under article 12 of the July 1925 Statute, no structure may be erected adjoining a classified immovable cultural property without prior permission, nor may the appearance be altered and the posting of advertisements either on, or within, the perimeter of a classified immovable cultural property is prohibited. Ownership may not be transferred without prior permission.

Movable Cultural Property

Under articles 15 and 17-20 of the July 1925 Statute, movable cultural property of prehistoric, historic or artistic interest may be classified as an historic monument in the public interest. All movable cultural property appertaining to a classified immovable cultural property is also considered to be classified and registered, and may not be removed or transferred without prior permission. The owner of a classified movable cultural property must give fifteen days notice of his intention to remove, transfer or sell the said movable cultural property, to the head of the local administration. The acquisition of a classified movable cultural property, other than in accordance with article 19 of the said Statute, is null and void, and persons who, in good faith, acquire such a classified movable cultural property, either directly or indirectly, have a right to reimbursement of the sum paid in full by the vendor thereof. Furthermore, the State is empowered to confiscate and resell the said movable cultural property.

Under Articles 23 and 24 of the July 1925, no classified movable cultural property may be altered, repaired or restored without prior permission, and in accordance with such conditions as may be specified. Classified movable cultural property which has been modified without permission must be restored, whenever possible, to its original condition at the expense of whoever effected or ordered the modification. Accordingly, the State is empowered to inspect classified cultural property and maintains the right of pre-emptive purchase of any movable cultural property offered for sale within fifteen days of being notified thereof.
Exportation of Cultural Property (cont.)

Under article 1 of the Decree of 14 February 1959 (No.34/GD) the export of cultural property from Vietnam is prohibited without a permit.

Care and Conservation of Historic Monuments

Under articles 25-27 of the July 1925 Statute, the various administrative services of the State, local administrations, public institutions and private owners who as the owners, assignees or guardians of classified movable cultural property, are responsible for the care and conservation thereof and must take all measures necessary to this effect. If the said cultural property is imperiled, and the administrative service, local administration, public institution or private individual concerned does not immediately take the measures necessary to ensure the care and conservation of the said movable cultural property, the State may prescribe and enforce the necessary conservation measures and, if required, remove the said movable cultural property to a State museum or depository.

Objects of artistic, prehistoric or archaeological interest, structures, mosaics, bas-reliefs, statues, medals, vases, columns and inscriptions, etc., existing above or below the ground of a classified immovable cultural property remain the property of the State.

Excavations and Discoveries

Under article 28 of the July 1925 Statute, no person may excavate or search for antiquities without prior written permission. Two months' notice must be given to the head of the local administration who, in turn, must notify the Minister who may issue a permit. Such a permit may be subject to conditions and, if the Minister considers that the excavation is being undertaken in a manner liable to cause injury to the said antiquities, the permit may be cancelled.

Under article 29 of the 1925 Statute, any person who, as a result of excavations or other works, discovers any ruins, sculptures, inscriptions or any other objects of prehistoric, historic, archaeological or artistic interest at the site of an historic monument, must notify the head of the local administration within twenty-four hours, who, in turn, must notify the Minister. Any person failing to declare such a discovery is liable to prosecution and the said ruin, sculpture, etc., is liable to confiscation.

Under article 30 of the July 1925 Statute, the State is empowered to retain any object of art or antiquity discovered during excavations or
other works on State property. If the said object or antiquity is discovered on private property, the State is empowered to retain it for a period of six months. The State also has the right of pre-emptive purchase.

Penal Provisions

Under article 35 of the July 1925 Statute, conservators, inspectors and guardians attached to a museum or archaeological depository, monument or group of monuments, are responsible for enforcing the above mentioned provisions.

Under article 4 of the Decree of 14 February 1959 (No.34/GD), the Ministers for National Education, Foreign Affairs, the Interior, and Finance are responsible for enforcing the said Decree with respect to the illegal exportation of cultural property from Vietnam.

Other Provisions

Under article 38 of the July 1925 Statute, the State is empowered to enter and inspect any classified historic monument and to regulate the reproduction thereof by painting, drawing and still or cine-photography by the levying of a special tax - the receipts from which accrue to the State and which may be used for the development of collections of classified movable cultural property and the conservation of classified immovable cultural property.

Draft Conservation Legislation

At the time of the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, draft legislation for the protection of cultural property in the southern zone of the country, south of the seventeenth parallel, was pending legislative consideration.

The purpose of the draft legislation was to update the French domestic Law of 31 December 1913 to match the requirements of the independent State. For example, the draft legislation sought to formally transfer the responsibility for enforcing the provisions of the 1913 Act from the long since departed French Governor and the Director of the Ecole Francaise d'Extreme-Orient (EFEO) to the Ministry of Culture, Youth and Sport and the Director of the Institute of Archaeological Research.
The said draft legislation sought also to increase the penalties for non-compliance with the 1913 Act, and for the defacement of any historic monument; to amend the national inventory of historic monuments compiled by the French to exclude those since destroyed and to include those since listed by the Institute of Archaeological Research since 1968; and, perhaps most significantly, to broaden the range of antiquities prohibited from exportation without a permit, in order to restrict the massive outflow of cultural objects from Vietnam. The proposed list of antiquities prohibited from being exported from Vietnam is as follows:

a) Antiquities of value because of their age (All objects related to fine arts of more than thirty years of age):

i) Prehistoric objects - stone implements, bronze implements, fossils;

ii) Armour, swords, guns, military equipment;

iii) Religious objects made of metal, carved wood, ceramic;

iv) Sculpture made of stone, wood, metal, clay;

v) Ceramics - bowls, glasses, dishes, vases, etc.;

vi) Furniture made of wood - tables, chairs, wardrobes, beds, divans, etc.;

vii) Gilded objects with lacquer, ebony, mother of pearl decoration;

viii) Paintings - traditional lacquer painting;

ix) Costumes;

x) Jewellery;

xi) Coins; and

xii) Embroidery.

b) Antiquities of Historic Value:

i) Royal Diplomas and Degrees, Imperial Appointment Documents, Royal Books bound in precious metals;

ii) Autographs, books, newspapers and periodicals of historic value written by Chinese, Cambodian, Champa or Vietnamese authors;

iii) Books, periodicals, newspapers and collections, including - Nam Phong (Hanoi), Bulletin des Amis du Vieux Hue, Bulletin de l'Indochine, and Tri Pan (Hanoi); and
Draft Conservation Legislation (cont.)

iv) Imperial, Royal and Mandarin Costumes, including suits, dresses, hats, shoes, belts, musical stones. 1

The said draft legislation sought also to impose stricter conditions for the granting of permits to excavate archaeological sites in Vietnam.

Conservation Related Legislation

Because of deteriorating environmental conditions at the Imperial Capital of Hue, arising from unauthorised and inappropriate development and land uses, and poorly designed buildings within the Citadel area, the President of the Council of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam issued a Ministerial Directive dated 28 May 1965 to conserve Hue. The Directive, which was addressed to the Minister of National Education (Historic Monuments Conservation Service); the Minister of the Interior; and the Minister of Public Works and Administration (Department of Construction, National Committee for the Conservation and Protection of Historic Sites and Monuments; urged the immediate introduction of the undernoted measures:

a) The early approval of a master plan for Hue - particularly for the Citadel;
b) Stricter control over the sale and rental of State and municipally-owned property;
c) Assessment of present building standards within the Citadel and establishment of new regulations;
d) Stricter control over the granting of building permits; and
e) Suspension of all building permits already granted within Citadel for hybrid or inappropriate styles of building likely to detract from the setting of the Imperial Capital.

Between 1965 and 1975 the Directive was largely ignored, however, and the situation continued to deteriorate as the respective Ministers concerned did not collaborate to ensure its effective implementation. As a result, the Institute of Archaeological Research proposed that a new directive be introduced to make it mandatory upon the issuing authority to inform the said Institute of all building permits granted in the Imperial Capital of Hue to the north of the Perfume River.

Following the signing of the 1954 Geneva Convention, which recognised the de facto division of Vietnam into two independently-governed zones, the responsibility for the classification, conservation and protection of the nation's heritage of cultural property was divided between two independent government agencies: to the north of the seventeenth parallel, the Department of Museums and Antiquities Preservation of the Democratic Government of Vietnam; and to the south, the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains (1954-56) and the Institute for Archaeological Research (1956-75) of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam. Because of the paucity of published information about the operations of the Department of Museums and Antiquities Preservation at Hanoi, the undernoted outline of the administrative framework in Vietnam is restricted to the situation prevailing between 1956 and 1975 to the south of the seventeenth parallel.

Institute of Archaeological Research, Saigon

The Institute of Archaeological Research was created by Ministerial Directive No.19/GĐ of 8 January 1956 as a replacement for the National Office for Preservation of Historic Remains. Formerly under the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Cultural Affairs, the Institute was transferred to the jurisdiction of the Ministry of Culture, Education and Youth in 1973.¹

Until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, the work of the Institute was divided amongst five departments:

1. Administration;
2. Accounts;
3. Documentation;
4. Archaeological Research; and

The Institute was also responsible for the administration of the National Museum at Saigon, the Hue Museum and the Agency for the Conservation of Historic Monuments in Hue, and the Da-Nang Museum. The total number of staff employed by the Institute in 1972 was one hundred and twenty-two persons.²

National Museum, Saigon

The National Museum at Saigon was built by the French Colonial Government in 1927-28 and opened in 1929. From 1965 onwards the Curator has been a Vietnamese. Until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, the collection was the biggest in the country and included examples of movable objects not only from Vietnam but also from adjacent countries and other countries of the Far East. The museum's principal function, however, was the gathering of local documents, Khmer sculptures and vestiges of Fou-nan and Champa art. The Fou-nan Room was one of the most interesting, containing wooden sculptures excavated from the banks of the Mekong and at Oc-Eo which indicated commercial and artistic links with the Roman Empire. The Japanese, Chinese and Vietnamese Rooms contained gilded statues, bronzes, jades, porcelains, sculptured furniture, Hue Blues and Chinese paintings. Many of the above-mentioned items were reported to have been illegally exported from the country during the chaos which preceded the events of 1975.

Da-Nang Museum, Tourane

The Da-Nang Museum at Tourane was built by the Ecole Francaise d'Extreme-Orient and opened in 1919. In 1934, two wings were added to provide additional exhibition space for the collection of Cham sculpture and architectural fragments collected from such sites as Mi-Son (5-10th centuries); Tra-Kieu (6-9th centuries); Dong-Duong (9th century); and Thap-Mam (12th century). In 1973, the Ethnological Research Centre was opened in nearby premises. Included in its collection of traditional Vietnamese objects were eight vernacular houses.

Hue Museum, Hue

The Hue Museum at the Imperial Capital of Hue was founded by Les Amis du Vieux Hue in 1923 and housed in the Dien Long An Palace. The principal function of the museum, which was closed down in 1968 as a result of the Mau Than Offensive, was to promote and protect the artistic and historic heritage of the Imperial Capital, and its collection included valuable furniture, vases, Chinese porcelain ware, ceremonial costumes, coins, household items and religious objects. The collection was removed to the comparative safety of the National Museum at Saigon in 1968. An ambitious plan to extend the museum and construct a conservation laboratory was approved in 1971, but subsequent events prevented its completion, and the project was abandoned.
In 1956, all the properties of the former Emperor Bao-Dai, who abdicated in 1945 and went into exile in 1955, and the Royal Family, including the entire Imperial Capital at Hue and the Royal Tombs in the locality, were transferred by Decree to the Government of the Republic of Vietnam. In order to administer the former Royal properties, the Government created the Organisation for the Conservation of Hue Historic Vestiges under the jurisdiction of a three-member committee known as the Royal Family Committee, the principal functions of which were the regulation of ancestor worship in the temples and pagodas of the former Imperial Capital and at the nearby Royal Tombs, and the preparation of an inventory of all the movable and immovable cultural property formerly owned by the Royal Family. In 1966, the responsibility for administering the Organisation for the Conservation of Hue Historic Vestiges passed to the Regional Governor of the area, and three years later, in 1969, both the Committee and the Organisation were abolished and replaced by a single Agency for the Conservation of Historic Monuments in Hue under the jurisdiction of the Director of the Institute for Archaeological Research at Saigon.

The responsibilities of the Agency, until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, were as follows:

1. To organise personnel to guard and maintain the cultural property of the Hue area;
2. To provide documentation and information necessary for the Institute for Archaeological Research to prepare the technical conservation projects for the Hue area; and
3. To supervise the conservation work carried out in the Hue area.

In 1972, the total number of staff employed by the Agency at Hue was seventy persons making it the largest undertaking of the Institute by far.

Conservation-Related Government Agencies

Until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, a number of conservation-related government agencies continued to operate.

---

Independently of the Institute for Archæological Research:

1. National Committee for the Conservation and Protection of Historic Sites and Monuments, Department of Construction, Ministry of Public Works and Communications; and


National Committee for the Conservation and Protection of Historic Sites and Monuments

The National Committee for the Conservation and Protection of Historic Sites and Monuments of the Department of Construction, Ministry of Public Works and Communications, was created by Decree in 1964 to undertake the restoration and repair of historic sites and monuments on the recommendation of the Institute for Archæological Research. However, the Institute had neither control over the selection of contractors and workmen, nor over the standard of workmanship, and from the very beginning the situation gave cause for concern.

Agency for the Development of the Da-Nang Area (ADDA)

The Agency for the Development of the Da-Nang Area of the Directorate-General of Reconstruction and Town Planning was established as a refugee relocation and work project at Da-Nang City. Between November 1973 and April 1975, a three-hundred strong workforce laboured at the Imperial Capital of Hue clearing away vegetation and debris and unblocking gutters and storm drains. A long-term project to clear the Citadel and Imperial City area completely, was brought to an abrupt end by the events of 1975.

1. Decree of 7 August 1964 (No.1633/CC).
2. The Ministerial Directive of 28 May 1965 urged close collaboration between the Ministers responsible for the said agencies. In December 1973, the contractor appointed by the Committee to undertake the repair of the Ngo Mon (Moon Gate) at the Imperial Capital of Hue was discovered dismantling and sawing-up red and gold-lacquered woodwork from the monument to make scaffolding. See Brown Morton III, W. Op.Cit. p.13.
3. In order to bring their work to the attention of the general public, the ADDA began by painting all the buildings repaired by the team turquoise and white at Da-Nang City. Their work at the Imperial Capital of Hue was not without danger and sacrifice, however, and four workers were killed in 1974 when a mine exploded in the Citadel.
President

Ministry of Culture, Education and Youth

Archaeological Research Institute

Admin.
Accounts
Documentation
Archaeological Research
Preservation of Historical Sites and Museums

Saigon National Museum
Da-Nang National Museum
Hue National Museum
Committee for Preservation of Hue Historical Monuments and Sites
TABLE 2.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARCHAELOGICAL STAFF CLASSIFICATION</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2)</th>
<th>(3)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Professional Staff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Administrators/Managers</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Historians</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Archaeologists</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Philologists, Epigraphists &amp; Linguists</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ethnologists &amp; Cultural Anthropologists</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Museologists/Curators</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8.9. Librarians</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Architects of Historical Monuments</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Excavation/Restoration Technicians</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Monument/Object Dating Specialists</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Others</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monument Excavation/Restoration/Conservation</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2)</th>
<th>(3)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Excavation Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Masonry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Wood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Monuments Conservation Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Draftmen &amp; Topographers</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Photographers &amp; Photo-Interpreters</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Other Specialists such as engineers, etc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cultural Property/Skeletal Excavation and Restoration/Conservation</th>
<th>STAFF AND EMPLOYMENT DATA</th>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2)</th>
<th>(3)*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Excavation Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Metal</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Wood</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d. Skeletons</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e. Textiles</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f. Documents, Paintings</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g. Pottery &amp; Ceramics</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Draftmen &amp; Artists</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Others</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Internal Supporting Staff                                      |                           |     |     |     |
| 1. Exhibition Experts                                          |                           | 1   | 1   |     |
| 2. Public Relations Experts                                    |                           | 2   | 2   |     |
| 3. Trained Guides                                              |                           | 1   | 3   |     |
| 4. Others                                                      |                           | 1   | 1   |     |
| TOTAL                                                           |                           | 1   | 4   | 7   |

| Outside Specialists Resources                                  |                           | 0   | 4   | 6   |
| 1. Geographical & Aerial Survey & Analysis                    |                           |     |     |     |
| 2. Geological Survey & Analysis                               |                           |     |     |     |
| 3. Public Works Specialists (lab. technician draftsmen etc.)   |                           |     |     |     |
| 4. Climatological Survey Experts                              |                           |     |     |     |
| 5. Archaeological Legislation Experts                         |                           |     |     |     |
| 6. Others                                                      |                           |     |     |     |

1. ARCAFA Project Development Office (APDO), 'Report of Task Force on Manpower in Archaeology in the SEAMEO Region', SEAMEO, Phnom Penh, October 1973 (Table 8).
Non-Government Conservation Agencies

From the early decades of the twentieth century, a number of private bodies have taken an interest in the conservation of Vietnam's heritage of cultural property, the most eminent of which, Les Amis du Vieux Hue, was founded in 1914. During its most active and influential period, from 1914 until 1934, 'Les Amis' included among its membership some of the most eminent historians, archaeologists, architects and scholars resident in Indo-China. The establishment of the Hue Museum in 1923 was entirely due to the efforts of Les Amis du Vieux Hue, and its quarterly journal, 'Bulletin des Amis du Vieux Hue', remains today the most comprehensive source of historical, architectural and archaeological information about the Imperial Capital of Hue and its environs.

The only known Vietnamese body functioning in the country up until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, was the Committee for the Reconstruction of the Old Capital of Hue, which attempted to bridge the gap between the surviving members of the Royal Family and the Government.

3. FINANCE

Central Government Finance

Up until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, the Institute for Archaeological Research was directly financed by the Ministry of Finance through the Ministry of Culture, Education and Youth.1 During the first decade of its establishment, the annual budget of the Institute, excluding the separately financed National Museum at Saigon, the Da-Nang Museum, the Hue Museum and the Agency for the Conservation of Historic Monuments in Hue, averaged three million Vietnamese Dollars.2

1. Although the financial year began on 1 January each year, the budget of the Ministry of Culture, Education and Youth was rarely approved before late April/early May. Thus the Institute did not usually learn of its financial situation until almost half way through the financial year, and in order to receive authorisation for expenditure on capital projects, it had to prepare detailed costings of all works. In the absence of skilled technical staff, much of this work had to be contracted out to private architects (approximately ten per cent.). Funds not allocated to authorised projects by 15 November were automatically transferred to the annual budget of the Department of Construction, Ministry of Public Works and Communications.

In the 1974 financial year, the last for which figures are available, the budget of the Institute was 24,520,000 Vietnamese Dollars, of which 20,100,000 was allocated to the following five projects:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Project</th>
<th>Cost (VN Dollars)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ngo Mon (Moon Gate), Hue</td>
<td>6,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thai Hoa Dien (Throne Palace), Hue</td>
<td>1,800,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dien Tho Cung (Queen Mother's Palace), Hue</td>
<td>8,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomb of Thieu Tri, Hue</td>
<td>1,500,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomb of Tu Duc, Hue</td>
<td>2,800,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>20,100,000</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Up until the fall of the Government of the Republic of Vietnam in 1975, no facilities for the training of archaeologists or conservators at university level existed in the southern zone of Vietnam. However, degree courses in History were taught at the Faculte des Lettres of the Universities of Hue and Saigon, and non-degree courses on the methodology of prehistoric excavations and museology were taught at the Universities of Saigon and Hue respectively. In consequence, the Institute for Archaeological Research experienced considerable difficulty recruiting suitably qualified staff, in particular: epigraphists; ethnologists; restorers of wood, metal and stone; artists; excavators and archaeologists.

Training Abroad

Because of limited financial and professional resources, the Institute for Archaeological Research was unable to train technicians in the field and had to rely on bilateral and multilateral assistance to send staff abroad for specialist training. From August 1972 until April 1975, the Government of the Republic of Vietnam was a member of the International Centre for Conservation at Rome (the 'Rome Centre').


APPENDICES

For ease of reference, the appendices are arranged chronologically under the following six headings:

1. General
2. Conservation Framework I: National
3. Conservation Framework II: International
4. UNESCO Conventions
5. Charter Documents
6. Meetings of Experts

GENERAL
1. Questionnaire

CONSERVATION FRAMEWORK I: NATIONAL

CONSERVATION FRAMEWORK II: INTERNATIONAL

UNESCO CONVENTIONS

CHARTER DOCUMENTS
MEETINGS OF EXPERTS

18. Recommendation of Sub-committee I (Historical Monuments and Sites and the Arrangement of Archaeological Sites) to the SEAMES Preparatory Conference, Phnom Penh, 1972.

GLOSSARY

BIBLIOGRAPHY

For ease of reference, the Bibliography is arranged alphabetically by author under the following three headings:

1. Monsoon Asian Setting
2. Comparative Analysis
3. National Profiles
JOINT RESEARCH PROGRAMME

THE CONSERVATION OF
IMMOVABLE CULTURAL PROPERTY
IN SOUTHEAST ASIA

Please Return Completed Questionnaire to:

John Russell Dip.Arch M.Sc. ARIAS RIBA
Heriot-Watt University: Edinburgh College of Art,
Lauriston Place, Edinburgh EH3 9DF,
SCOTLAND (UK).
SECTION 1: LEGISLATION

Question 1 (please answer YES or NO)

Is immovable cultural property protected by SPECIFIC legislative provisions designed to ensure their preservation and protection, i.e. Ancient Monuments Acts, Antiquities Ordinances, Cultural Property Protection Laws, etc.?    YES NO

Question 2

If answer to Question 1 is YES, please specify:
Title(s) of Legislation    Date of Enactment

Question 3 (please answer YES or NO)

Are above mentioned legislative provisions (if any) in process of amendment or repeal?    YES NO

Question 4 (please answer YES or NO)

Are above mentioned legislative provisions (if any) published and available for research purposes?    YES NO

Question 5

If answer to Question 4 is YES, please specify language(s) of text(s):

Question 6 (please answer YES or NO)

Is immovable cultural property also protected by GENERAL legislative provisions directed at broader areas of concern but which, by their nature, incorporate provisions relating to their conservation and restoration, or lend themselves to such interpretation, i.e. Town Planning Acts, Land Acquisition Acts, Zoning Ordinances, Public Works Regulations, Highways Acts, etc.?    YES NO

Question 7

If answer to Question 6 is YES, please specify:
Title(s) of Legislation    Date of Enactment

Question 8 (please answer YES or NO)

Are above mentioned legislative provisions (if any) in process of amendment or repeal?    YES NO

Question 9 (please answer YES or NO)

Are above mentioned legislative provisions (if any) published and available for research purposes?    YES NO
If answer to Question 9 is YES, please specify language(s) of text(s):

**Question 11 (please answer YES or NO)**

Do the above mentioned legislative provisions in Questions 2 and 7 provide for some or all of the following:

1. The designation and protection of:
   a) Prehistoric sites?
   b) Archaeological sites (unexcavated)?
   c) Archaeological sites (excavated)?
   d) Individual monuments?
   e) Groups of monuments/ensembles?
   f) Historic districts?
   g) Historic towns?
   h) Public open space/setting of monuments?
   i) Sites of outstanding natural beauty?
   j) Sites of scientific interest?

2. The limitation of:
   a) Private property rights?
   b) Use of property and/or sites?
   c) Alteration, removal and/or demolition of property and/or sites?
   d) Building activities within vicinity of property and/or sites?
   e) Other activities likely to damage and/or destroy property and/or sites?

3. Does the owner or lawful occupier of designated property have:
   a) Right of appeal against designation?
   b) Right to payment of compensation for any loss arising from designation?
   c) Right to grant aid towards cost of maintenance in whole or in part?
   d) Right to grant aid for restoration in whole or in part?
   e) Right to other financial assistance, ie., tax concessions, low interest loans, etc.?

4. May authority designated under the provisions of the law:
   a) Appoint inspectors to enter and examine designated property and sites after giving due notice of intention to do so?
   b) Accept designated property and sites into their guardianship?
   c) Expropriate designated property and sites when it can be shown to be in the public interest?

5. Are owners and/or lawful occupiers liable to prosecution for infringements of the law?

6. Upon conviction are owners and/or lawful occupiers liable to:
   a) Imprisonment?
   b) A Fine?
   c) Both?
**SECTION 2: ADMINISTRATION**

**Question 12** (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of cultural property the responsibility of a **SPECIFIC GOVERNMENT AGENCY**, i.e. Board of Antiquities, Cultural Properties Bureau, Department of Archaeology, etc.?  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Question 13**

If answer to Question 12 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Agency</th>
<th>Director</th>
<th>Date Established</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Question 14**

If the answer to Question 12 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Experts/Professional</th>
<th>No. of Skilled Technicians</th>
<th>Others Employed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Question 15**

If the answer to Question 12 is YES, please specify Ministry to which agency is responsible:

**Question 16** (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of cultural property also the responsibility of **OTHER GOVERNMENT AGENCIES** which, although not addressing themselves specifically to the problem, by the nature of their work, encompass such matters, i.e. Departments of Fine Arts, Home Affairs, Boards of Tourism, Public Health, Planning, etc.?  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Question 17**

If the answer to Question 16 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name(s) of Agency(ies)</th>
<th>Director(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Question 18**

If the answer to Question 16 is YES, please specify Ministry(ies) to which OTHER GOVERNMENT AGENCIES are responsible:

**Question 19** (please answer YES or NO)

Is work undertaken by abovementioned agency(ies) subject to control of **SPECIFIC GOVERNMENT AGENCY** named in Question 12?  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Question 20 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property also undertaken by NON-GOVERNMENT AGENCIES, i.e. Religious Foundations, Learned Societies, Private Restoration Groups, etc.?  

YES NO

Question 21

If the answer to Question 20 is YES, please specify:
Name(s) of Agency(ies)  Director(s)  Date Established

Question 22 (please answer YES or NO)

Are the above mentioned non-government agencies (if any) subject to control of SPECIFIC GOVERNMENT AGENCY named in Question 12?  

YES NO

Question 23 (please answer YES or NO)

Are outside contractors appointed to undertake restoration works by OTHER GOVERNMENT AGENCIES named in Question 16 and NON-GOVERNMENT AGENCIES named in Question 20?  

YES NO

Question 24 (please answer YES or NO)

If the answer to Question 23 is YES, please specify whether SPECIFIC GOVERNMENT AGENCY named in Question 12 has control over:

a) Selection of contractors?  
b) Selection of workmen?  
c) Selection of craftsmen?  
d) Quality of workmanship?  

YES NO

Question 25 (please answer YES or NO)

Is there a diagram and/or explanatory text describing the administrative relationship between the agencies specified in Questions 12, 16 and 20 available for research purposes?  

SECTION 3: FINANCE

Question 26 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property directly financed by GOVERNMENT funds?  

YES NO

Question 27

If answer to Question 26 is YES, please specify:
Fiscal Year (From/To)  Total Budget (local currency)
Question 28

If answer to Question 26 is YES, please specify breakdown of total budget between the following sectors:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acquisitions/Development</th>
<th>Operations/Maintenance</th>
<th>Salaries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question 29 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property also financed by NON-GOVERNMENT funds from such non-government agencies as those named in Question 20?

Question 30

If answer to Question 29 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name(s) of Agency(ies)</th>
<th>Name(s) of Project(s)</th>
<th>Total Funds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question 31 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property also financed under the provisions of any BILATERAL AGREEMENT?

Question 32

If answer to Question 31 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name(s) of Country(ies)</th>
<th>Name(s) of Project(s)</th>
<th>Total Funds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Question 33 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property also financed by PRIVATE FOUNDATIONS?

Question 34

If the answer to Question 33 is YES, please specify:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name(s) of Foundation(s)</th>
<th>Name(s) of Project(s)</th>
<th>Total Funds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
SECTION 4: CAUSES OF DETERIORATION OF IMMOVABLE CULTURAL PROPERTY

**Question 35** (please answer YES or NO)

Is the deterioration of immovable cultural property due to some or all of the following causes:

1. Intrinsic Causes Relative to Position
   a) Climatic conditions
   b) Subsoil conditions

2. Intrinsic Causes Inherent in Structure
   a) Defective building materials
      i) Timber
      ii) Stone
      iii) Masonry
      iv) Other
   b) Defective structure/construction
      i) Foundations
      ii) Walls
      iii) Floors
      iv) Roofs
      v) Other

3. Extrinsic Causes Relative to the Action of Man:
   a) Abandonment
   b) Robbery and pilferage
   c) Vandalism
   d) Unauthorised excavations
   e) Unauthorised repairs, alterations and/or demolitions
   f) Faulty restoration
   g) Urbanisation and/or redevelopment
   h) Air pollution
   i) War damage
   j) Other

4. Extrinsic Causes Relative to the Action of Natural Agents having an Occasional Effect:
   a) Earthquakes, landslides and other ground movements
   b) Volcanic eruptions and other gaseous discharges
   c) Flooding
   d) Cyclones, tornadoes and typhoons
   e) Other

5. Extrinsic Causes Relative to the Action of Natural Agents having a Prolonged Effect:
   a) Physical factors: Temperature
   b) Wind
   c) Water
   d) Chemical factors
   e) Biological and Micro-biological factors
      i) Trees and plants
      ii) Algae and lichens
      iii) Fungi and micro-organisms
      iv) Animals

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. d)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. e)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. f)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. j)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. d)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. e)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. f)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. i)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. j)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. d)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. e)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. b)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. d)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. e)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. f)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. g)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. h)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Question 36 (please answer YES or NO)

Is the preservation and restoration of immovable cultural property being undertaken within the context of a NATIONAL CONSERVATION POLICY? YES NO

Question 37 (please answer YES or NO)

If the answer to Question 36 is YES, does NATIONAL CONSERVATION POLICY embody any of the following:

a) International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (the Venice Charter) 1964 YES NO
b) UNESCO Recommendation defining the International Principles to be applied in the case of Archaeological Excavations, New Delhi, 1956 YES NO
c) UNESCO Recommendation concerning the Safeguarding of the Beauty and Character of Landscapes and Sites, Paris, 1962 YES NO
d) UNESCO Recommendation concerning the Preservation of Cultural Property endangered by Public and Private Works, Paris, 1968 YES NO

Question 38 (please answer YES or NO)

If the answer to Question 36 is YES, is there an explanatory text describing the aims of, and methods of implementing, the NATIONAL CONSERVATION POLICY available for research purposes? YES NO

Question 39 (please answer YES or NO)

Is there a NATIONAL CONSERVATION PROGRAMME of preservation and restoration? YES NO

Question 40

If the answer to Question 39 is YES, please specify:

Name(s) of Project(s) Proposed Date(s) of Completion

Question 41 (please answer YES or NO)

Is there a NATIONAL ARCHIVE/CENTRE OF DOCUMENTATION? YES NO

Question 42

If answer to Question 41 is YES, please specify:

Name(s) of Institution(s) Director(s) Date Established

Question 43 (please answer YES or NO)

If answer to Question 41 is YES, does NATIONAL ARCHIVE/CENTRE OF DOCUMENTATION include:

a) Photographs? YES NO
b) Measured drawings? YES NO
c) Records of Interventions/Restorations? YES NO
d) Other information? YES NO
Question 44 (please answer YES or NO)

Is there a NATIONAL INVENTORY of immovable cultural property?

YES NO

Question 45

If the answer to Question 44 is YES, please specify:

Date Established Date of Review Total No. of Listed Items

Question 46 (please answer YES or NO)

If the answer to Question 44 is YES, does NATIONAL INVENTORY include some or all of the following classifications:

a) Prehistoric sites? YES NO
b) Archaeological sites (unexcavated)? YES NO
c) Archaeological sites (excavated)? YES NO
d) Individual monuments? YES NO
e) Groups of monuments/ensembles? YES NO
f) Historic districts? YES NO
g) Historic towns? YES NO
h) Public open space/setting of monuments? YES NO
i) Sites of outstanding natural beauty? YES NO
j) Sites of scientific interest? YES NO
k) Others? YES NO

Question 47 (please answer YES or NO)

If the answer to Question 46 in YES, is NATIONAL INVENTORY published and available for research purposes?

YES NO

SECTION 6 : EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Question 48 (please answer YES or NO)

Is there a NATIONAL CONSERVATION LABORATORY?

YES NO

Question 49

If the answer to Question 48 is YES, please specify:

Name of Institution Director Date Established

Question 50

If answer to Question 48 is YES, please specify:

No. of Professional/Expert Conservators No.of Skilled Technicians Other Staff

Question 51

If answer to Question 50 is YES, does NATIONAL CONSERVATION LABORATORY have a teaching function?

YES NO
Question 52 (please answer YES or NO)
Are conservation experts/skilled technicians trained nationally?  YES  NO

Question 53
If answer to Question 52 is YES, please specify:
Name(s) of Institution(s)  Course(s)  Duration (months)  Date Established

Question 54
If answer to Question 52 is NO, please specify:
Training Country(ies)  Name(s) of Institutions  Course(s)

SECTION 7: MEMBERSHIP OF INTERNATIONAL AGENCIES

Question 55 (please answer YES or NO)
Is country Member State of the INTERNATIONAL CENTRE FOR CONSERVATION (THE ROME CENTRE)?  YES  NO

Question 56 (please answer YES or NO)
Is there a national committee for UNESCO?  YES  NO

Question 57 (please answer YES or NO)
Is there a national committee for ICOM?  YES  NO

Question 58 (please answer YES or NO)
Is there a national committee for ICOMOS?  YES  NO

Question 59 (please answer YES or NO)
Is country signatory to Convention and/or Protocol for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict, the Hague, 1954?  YES  NO

Question 60 (please answer YES or NO)

Question 61 (please answer YES or NO)
Is country signatory to Convention concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage, Paris, 1972?  YES  NO

Please return completed questionnaire to:
John Russell Dip.Arch M.Sc ARIBA RIBA
Heriot-Watt University: Edinburgh College of Art,
Lauriston Place, Edinburgh EH3 9DF,
SCOTLAND (U.K).
APPENDIX NO.2

NATIONAL CONSERVATION AND RELATED AGENCIES IN MONSOON ASIA.

Union of Burma

Department of Archaeology, (2)
32D, Prome Road,
6th Mile Post,
RANGOON

Construction Corporation,
60, Shwe Dagon Road,
RANGOON

National Housing and Town and Country Planning Board,
223-234, Bogyoke Aung San Street,
RANGOON

Burma Historical Commission,
Culture House,
Nawarat Road,
RANGOON

Burma Research Society,
Central University Library,
University Post Office,
Prome Road,
RANGOON

Defence Services Historical Research Institute,
Stewart Road,
RANGOON

National Museum,
26/42 Phayre Street,
RANGOON

National Museum of Art and Archaeology,
Jubilee Hall,
Pagoda Road,
RANGOON

National Library,
Municipal Corporation Buildings,
RANGOON

State Library and Museum,
MOULMEIN

State Library and Museum,
MANDALAY

State Library and Museum,
KYAUKPYU

(2) Questionnaire.
Republic of Indonesia

Directorate of History and Archaeology,
Jalan Cilacap 4,
P.O. Box 2533,
JAKARTA

National Research Centre of Archaeology,
Jalan Cilacap 4,
P.O. Box 2533,
JAKARTA

Department of Archaeology,
Faculty of Letters,
Gajah Mada University,
Komplek Universitas GAMA,
Bulaksumur,
JOGJAKARTA

Department of Archaeology,
Faculty of Letters,
University of Indonesia,
Komplek Rawamangun,
JAKARTA

Department of Archaeology,
Faculty of Letters,
Bali Udayana University,
DENPASAR

Museum Pusat,
Jalan Merdeka Barat 12,
JAKARTA

Museum Purbakala,
MojoKerto,
JAWA TIMUR

Museum Bali,
Jalan Let. Kol. Wisnu,
DENPASAR

Museum Legaligo,
Jalan Benteng,
UJUNG PANDANG

Museum Sonobudoyo,
Jalan Alun-alun Lor No.2,
JOGJAKARTA

Museum Siwa Lima,
Komplek Universitas Pattimura,
AMBON

Museum Mpu Tantular,
Jalan Mayangkara 8,
SURABAYA
Republic of Indonesia (cont.)

Museum Radyapustaka,
Jalan Slamet Ryadi 235,
SURAKARTA

Museum Aceh,
BANDA ACEH

Museum Le Majeur,
Sanur,
DENPASAR

Badan Pemugaran Candi Borobudur (BPCB),
c/o UNESCO Field Science Office in Southeast Asia,
Jalan M. H. Thamrin 14,
Tromol Pos 273/JKT,
JAKARTA

Democratic Khampouchea

The undernoted national conservation and related agencies functioned until the fall of the Government of the Khmer Republic on 17 April 1975. No information is available regarding the present situation.

National Centre for Cultural Development, (2)
Division of Cultural Patrimony,
PHNOM PENH

Musee National de Phnom-Penh,
PHNOM PENH

Arcafa Project Development Office (APDO),
2, Samdech Ouk,
PHNOM PENH

Conservation d'Angkor (EFEO),
SIEM REAP

Faculty of Archaeology,
University of Fine Arts,
PHNOM PENH

Faculty of Letters,
University of Phnom-Penh,
PHNOM PENH

People's Democratic Republic of Laos

The undernoted national conservation and related agencies functioned until the fall of the Royal Lao Government on 2 December 1975. No information is available regarding the present situation.

Department of Archaeology, (2)
VIENTIANE
People's Democratic Republic of Laos (cont.)

Department of Museums and Libraries,
VIENITANE

Federation of Malaysia

National Museum,
Division of Archaeology and Ancient Monuments,
Jalan Damansara,
KUALA LUMPUR

Sabah Museum,
KOTA KINABALU

Sarawak Museum,
KUCHING

National Archaeological Survey and Research Unit,
c/o Department of History,
Faculty of Arts,
University of Malaysia,
KUALA LUMPUR

Malacca State Museum;
MALACCA

Kelantan State Museum,
KOTA BAHARU

Perak State Museum,
TAIPING

Pahang State Museum,
KUANTAN

Republic of the Philippines

National Museum,
Cultural Properties Division,
Liwasang Rizal,
MANILA

National Historical Commission,
c/o National Museum,
Liwasang Rizal,
MANILA

Department of Anthropology,
College of Arts and Sciences,
University of the Philippines,
Diliman,
QUEZON CITY

Department of Anthropology,
Siliman University,
DUMAGUETE CITY
Republic of the Philippines (cont.)

Department of Anthropology,  
University of San Carlos,  
CEBU CITY

Department of Anthropology and Sociology,  
Ateneo de Manila University,  
Loyola Heights,  
QUEZON CITY

Department of Anthropology,  
Mindanao State University,  
MARAWI CITY

Institute of Philippines Studies,  
c/o Philippine Centre for Advanced Studies,  
University of the Philippines,  
Diliman,  
QUEZON CITY

Xavier Folklife Museum and Archives,  
Xavier University,  
CAGAYAN DE ORO CITY

Cagayan Provincial Museum,  
Tuguegarao,  
CAGAYAN

Republic of Singapore

Preservation of Monuments Board (PMB),  
Ground Floor, National Development Building,  
Maxwell Road,  
SINGAPORE 2

National Museum,  
Stamford Road,  
SINGAPORE 6

Ministry of Land and National Development,  
Maxwell Road,  
SINGAPORE 2

National Library,  
Stamford Road,  
SINGAPORE 6

Faculty of Architecture,  
University of Singapore,  
Lady Hill Campus,  
Lady Hill Road,  
SINGAPORE 10

Thailand

National Museum,  
BANGKOK
Archaeology Division,
Department of Fine Arts,
Ministry of Education,
BANGKOK

Museum Division,
Department of Fine Arts,
Ministry of Education,
BANGKOK

Department of Town and Country Planning,
Ministry of the Interior,
BANGKOK

Hilltribes Research Centre,
Chiangmai University,
CHIANGMAI

Thai Studies Institute,
Thammasart University,
BANGKOK

Thai Studies Project,
c/o Faculty of Arts,
Chulalongkorn University,
BANGKOK

Faculty of Archaeology,
Silpakorn University,
BANGKOK

Faculty of Painting and Sculpture,
Silpakorn University,
BANGKOK

Faculty of Decorative Arts,
Silpakorn University,
BANGKOK

Faculty of Architecture,
Chulalongkorn University,
BANGKOK

Faculty of Architecture,
Pra Chom Kloa Institute of Technology,
Ladkrabang,
BANGKOK

Institute of Asian Studies,
Chulalongkorn University,
BANGKOK

Siam Society,
BANGKOK

Association of Siamese Architects,
BANGKOK
Socialist Republic of Viet-Nam

The undernoted national conservation and related agencies functioned until the fall of the Government of the Republic of South Vietnam on 30 April 1975 and subsequent reunification of the country on 2 July 1975. No information is available upon the present situation.

Institute for Archaeological Research, 34, Gia-Long, SAIGON

Agency for the Conservation of Historic Monuments in Hue, c/o Institute for Archaeological Research, 34, Gia-Long, SAIGON

Agency for the Development of the Da-Nang Area (ADLA), Directorate General of Reconstruction and Town Planning, Ministry of Public Works and Communications, SAIGON

National Committee for the Conservation and Protection of Historic Sites and Monuments, Department of Construction, Ministry of Public Works and Construction, SAIGON

National Museum, SAIGON

Da-Nang Museum TOURANE

Hue Museum, HUE

Department of Museums and Antiquities Preservation, Government Offices, HANOI
APPENDIX NO.3

NATIONAL CONSERVATION AND RELATED LEGISLATION IN MONSOON ASIA

Union of Burma

Ancient Monuments Preservation Act 1904 (R)
Antiquities Act 1957 (A)
Antiquities (Amendment) Act 1962

Republic of Indonesia

Decree of 8 September 1927 (relating to the tasks to be performed by the Archaeological Service) (R)

Monumenten Ordonnante Staatsblad No.238 of 1931

Ministerial Order of 5 February 1960 (concerning implementation of the Monumenten Ordonnante Staatsblad No.238 of 1931)

Joint Instruction issued by the Minister of Finance and the Governor of the Central Bank of the Republic of Indonesia (concerning the export of antiquities and other objects of historical value), Refs. 27A/Kep/II, 1970; Kep-62/MI/III/2, 1970; and Kep.3/CHI, 1970

Ministerial Circular of 23 March 1970 (concerning implementation of Joint Instruction)

Ministerial Order No.761/E.III, 1972 (concerning establishment of committee to draft new law for protection of cultural property under chairmanship of Director of Museums)

Ministerial Order No.1/AI, 1973 (concerning enforcement of the Monumenten Ordonnante Staatsblad No.238 of 1931)

Democratic Khampouchea

Arrete du 9 mars 1900, JOIF, 1900, p.502 (concerning the preservation of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)

Arrete du 15 avril 1905, JOIF, 1905, p.521 (concerning the classification of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)

Arrete du 18 mai 1908, JOIF, 1908, p.977 (extending Arrete du 9 mars 1900 to Siemreap, Sisophon and Battambang)

Ordonnance royale du 31 mars 1911, BAC, 1911 (concerning the protection of the setting of the ruins at Angkor)

Ordonnance royale du 11 octobre 1923, BAC, 1923, p.810 (concerning the conditions of classification of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value under the arrete du 15 avril 1905)
Democratic Kampuchea (cont.)

Arrete du 15 fevrier 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.250 (proclaiming the Decret du 23 decembre 1924 extending to Indo-China, subject to terms and conditions, the French domestic loi du 31 decembre 1913)

Arrete du 30 avril 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.390 (concerning the precise application of the Decret du 23 decembre 1924)

Arrete du 11 juillet 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1422 (concerning the classification, conservation and protection of monuments under the Decret du 23 decembre 1924)


Arretes des 16 mai 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1754; 29 avril 1930, JOIF, 1930, p.1885; 1er octobre 1932, JOIF, 1932, p.3297; 17 juillet 1935, JOIF, 1935, p.2645; and 24 fevrier 1938, JOIF, 1938, p.907 (concerning the classification and listing of Khmer monuments)


Arretes des 14 fevrier 1923, JOIF, 1923, p.303; 2 juin 1926, JOIF, 1926, p.370; 2 juin 1926, JOIF, 1926, p.1527; and 30 juillet 1931, JOIF, 1931, p.2612 (concerning the exportation of Khmer antiquities and art objects)


Accord cultural franco-khmer du 15 juin 1950 (concerning the continuing enforcement of the above mentioned statutes, ordinances, laws, etc. following the granting of independence to Cambodia as an Associate State of the French Union)

Accord bilateral du 23 octobre 1956 (concerning the conservation of the ruins at Angkor by the Ecole francaise d'extreme-orient)

Accord bilateral du 23 octobre 1956 (concerning archaeological excavations in Cambodia)

Accord du 23 octobre 1956 (concerning implementation of the above mentioned bilateral agreements)

Code civil Khmer (Articles 216, 217, 640 and 703)
Arrete du 9 mars 1900, JOIF, 1900, p.502 (concerning the preservation of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)

Arrete du 15 avril 1905, JOIF, 1905, p.521 (concerning the classification of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)

Arrete du 18 mai 1908, JOIF, 1908, p.975 (extending Arrete du 9 mars 1900)

Arrete du 15 février 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.250 (proclaiming the Decret du 23 décembre 1924 extending to Indo-China, subject to terms and conditions, the French domestic Loi du 31 décembre 1913)

Arrete du 30 avril 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.380 (concerning the precise application of the Decret du 23 décembre 1924)

Arrete du 11 juillet 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1422 (concerning the classification, conservation and protection of monuments under the Decret du 23 décembre 1924)

Arretes des 16 mai 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1754; 29 avril 1930, JOIF, 1930, p.1835, 1er octobre 1932, p.3201; 17 juillet 1935, JOIF, 1935, p.2048; and 24 février 1938, JOIF, 1938, p.907 (concerning the classification and listing of Laotian monuments)

Arretes des 14 février 1923, JOIF, 1923, p.303; 2 juin 1926, JOIF, 1926, p.670; 2 juin 1926, JOIF, 1926, p.1527; and 30 juillet 1931, JOIF, 1931, p.3612 (concerning the exportation of Laotian antiquities and art objects)


Code civil laotien (Articles 93-95)

Code penal laotien (Articles 100, 101, 220 and 227)

Federation of Malaysia

Treasure Trove Enactment (Johore) 1936 (R)

Treasure Trove Enactment (Kedah) 1933 (R)

Antiquities Ordinance (Sarawak) 1954

Antiquities and Treasure Trove Ordinance No.14 of 1957

National Land Code No.56 of 1965

Emergency (Essential Power) Ordinance No.46 of 1970
Republic of the Philippines

Act Prohibiting the Exportation of Antiquities of the Philippines Islands, No.3877 of 1931 (R)

Executive Order No.59 of 1964 (authorising the Director of the National Museum to issue rules and regulations regarding the export of antiquities)

Cultural Properties Preservation and Protection Act, No.4846 of 1966 (A)


Presidential Decree No.374 (amending certain sections of Republic Act No.4846 of 1966) 1974

Presidential Decree No.223 of 1973 (establishing a number of National Treasures and National Shrines, Monuments and/or Landmarks)

Republic of Singapore

Planning Ordinance No.12 of 1939

Land Acquisition 1966

Preservation of Monuments Act, No.45 of 1970

Thailand

Act on Ancient Monuments, Objects of Art, Antiques and National Monuments, BE.2477, 1934 (R)

Act on Ancient Monuments, Objects of Art, Antiques and National Monuments, BE.2486, 1943 (R)

Act on Ancient Monuments, Objects of Art, Antiques and National Monuments, BE.2504, 1961

Ministerial Regulations Nos.1-6 (issued under the Act on Ancient Monuments, Objects of Art, Antiques and National Monuments, BE.2504, 1961) 1961

National Executive Council Amendment, No.189, BE.2515, 1972 (concerning the excavation of antiques and artifacts in the area of Udon Thani and Sakon Nakon provinces)

Bangkok Metropolitan Administration Act, BE.2513, 1975

Penal Code (Articles 355 and 357)

Socialist Republic of Vietnam

Arrête du 9 mars 1900, JOIF, 1900, p.502 (concerning the preservation of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)
Arreté du 15 avril 1903, JOIF, 1905, p.521 (concerning the classification of monuments and objects of historical and artistic value)

Arreté du 15 février 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.250 (promulgating the Decret du 23 décembre 1924 extending to Indo-China, subject to terms and conditions, the French domestic Loi du 31 décembre 1913)

Arreté du 30 avril 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.390 (concerning the precise application of the Decret du 23 décembre 1924)

Arreté du 11 juillet 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1422 (concerning the classification, conservation and protection of monuments under the Decret du 23 décembre 1924)

Arretes des 16 mai 1925, JOIF, 1925, p.1754; 29 avril 1930, JOIF, 1930, p.1555; 1er octobre 1932, JOIF, 1932, p.3257; 17 juillet 1935, JOIF, 1935, p.2645; and 24 février 1938, JOIF, 1938, p.907 (concerning the classification and listing of Vietnamese monuments)

Arretes des 14 février 1923, JOIF, 1923, p.393; 2 juin 1928, JOIF, 1928, p.1527; and 30 juillet 1931, JOIF, 1931, p.2312 (concerning the exportation of Vietnamese antiquities and art objects)


Decree No.34/GD of 1959 (regulating the exportation of cultural property from South Vietnam)

Ministerial Directive of 23 May 1963 (concerning the regulation of land use and new construction in Hue)

Decree No.797/HK/VN/VN of 17 July 1969 (establishing Agency for the Conservation of Historic Monuments in Hue)

(A) Amended
(B) Repealed
JOIF = Journal Officiel de l'Indochine Francaise
JOEF = Journal Officiel de la Republique Francaise
The undernoted international governmental agencies are each active in the field of conservation in Southeast Asia:

1. Asian and Pacific Council (ASPAC),
   Cultural and Social Centre,
   I.P.O. Box 3129,
   SEOUL

   The following countries are Member States of ASPAC:
   Federation of Malaysia; Republic of the Philippines; and Thailand.

2. Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN)
   P.O. Box 517,
   BANGKOK.

   The following countries are Member States of ASEAN:
   Republic of Indonesia; Federation of Malaysia; Republic of the Philippines; Republic of Singapore; and Thailand.

3. Colombo Plan for Cooperative Economic Development in South and Southeast Asia,
   c/o Council for Technical Cooperation in South and Southeast Asia,
   COLOMBO.

   The following countries are Member States of the Colombo Plan:
   Union of Burma; Republic of Indonesia; Federation of Malaysia; Republic of the Philippines; Republic of Singapore; and Thailand. The Khmer Republic; the Kingdom of Laos; and the Republic of South Vietnam were Member States of the Colombo Plan until the Communist take-over in 1975.

4. International Centre for Conservation (ICCROM),
   13, Via di San Michele,
   00153 ROME

   The following countries are Member States of ICCROM:
   Federation of Malaysia; and Thailand. The Khmer Republic; and the Republic of South Vietnam were Member States of ICCROM until the Communist take-over in 1975.

5. Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Organisation (SEAMEO),
   Darakarn Building,
   920, Sukhumvit Road,
   BANGKOK 11.
The following countries are Member States of SEAMEO:

Republic of Indonesia; Federation of Malaysia; Republic of the Philippines; Republic of Singapore; and Thailand. The Khmer Republic; the Kingdom of Laos; and the Republic of South Vietnam were Member States of SEAMEO until the Communist take-over of 1975.

6. United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO),
7, Place de Fontenoy,
PARIS 75700.

UNESCO Field Science Office for Southeast Asia,
Jalan M.H. Thamrin,
Tromol Pos 213/JKT,
JAKARTA

UNESCO Regional Office for Education in Asia,
Darakarn Building,
920, Sukhumvit Road,
BANGKOK

UNESCO Asian Cultural Centre,
6, Fukuromachi-ku,
Shinjuku-ku,
TOKYO

The following countries are Member States of UNESCO:

Union of Burma; Republic of Indonesia; Federation of Malaysia; Republic of the Philippines; Republic of Singapore; and Thailand. The Khmer Republic; the Kingdom of Laos; and the Republic of South Vietnam were members of UNESCO until the Communist take-over of 1975. The Socialist Republic of Vietnam became the 149th Member State of the United Nations (UN) on 20 September 1977.
INTERNATIONAL NON-GOVERNMENTAL CONSERVATION AND RELATED AGENCIES

The undernoted international non-governmental agencies are each active in the field of conservation in Southeast Asia:


2. International Council of Museums (ICOM) Regional Agency in Asia, 3-4 Sapru House Annex, NEW DELHI 1, and c/o National Museum, BANGKOK.

To date, ICOM National Committees have been established in the following countries:

Republic of Indonesia

Prof. Dr. Ida Bagus Mantra, Director-General of Cultural Affairs, Department of Education and Culture, Jalan Tjlatjap 4, JAKARTA

Federation of Malaysia

Dr. Sharum bin Yub, Director-General of Museums, Muzium Negara/National Museum, Jalan Damansara, KUALA LUMPUR

Republic of the Philippines

Mr. Godofredo L. Alcasid, Director, National Museum, Liwasang Rizal, MANILA

Thailand

Mr. Boonsoom Martin, Minister of Education, Ministry of Education, BANGKOK
3. International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS), Hotel Saint Aignan, 75, Rue du Temple, PARIS 75003

An ICOMOS National Committee if in the process of constitution in only one country:

**Federation of Malaysia**

Kamarul Baharin bin Buyong, Curator of Monuments, Museums Department, Muzium Negara/National Museum, Jalan Damansara, KUALA LUMPUR

4. International Institute for Conservation of Historic and Artistic Works (IIC), 6, Buckingham Street, LONDON WC2N 6BA

The following are supporting institutions of the IIC:

**Federation of Malaysia**

National Archives of Malaysia, Bangunan Persekutuan, Jalan Sultan, PETALING JAYA

**Republic of Singapore**

National Museum, Stamford Road, SINGAPORE 6

**Thailand**

Museum Conservation Laboratory, Archaeological Division, Department of Fine Arts, BANGKOK

5. Royal Asiatic Society, 58, Queen Anne Street, LONDON W1M 9LA

Branch and Associate Societies are established in the following countries:

**Federation of Malaysia**

Royal Asiatic Society of Malaysia (f.1878)
International Non-Government Agencies (cont.)

Union of Burma

Burma Research Society
INTERNATIONAL NON-GOVERNMENTAL FOUNDATIONS

The undernoted international foundations - all with headquarters in the United States of America but having local field offices and Asian cultural programmes of varying scale - are each active in the field of conservation in Southeast Asia:

1. The Asia Foundation,
   550 Kearny Street,
   SAN FRANCISCO,
   California 94108,
   U.S.A.

2. The Ford Foundation,
   320 East 43rd Street,
   NEW YORK,
   New York 10017,
   U.S.A.

   The Ford Foundation,
   2943E Soi Somprasong 3,
   Petchburi Road
   BANGKOK

3. John D. Rockefeller III Fund,
   50 Rockefeller Plaza,
   NEW YORK,
   New York 1002
   U.S.A.

The High Contracting Parties,

Recognising that cultural property has suffered grave damage during recent armed conflicts and that, by reason of the developments in the technique of warfare, it is in increasing danger of destruction;

Being convinced that damage to cultural property belonging to any people whatsoever means damage to the cultural heritage of all mankind, since each people makes its contribution to the culture of the world;

Considering that the preservation of the cultural heritage is of great importance for all peoples of the world and that it is important that this heritage should receive international protection;

Guided by the principles concerning the protection of cultural property during armed conflict, as established in the Conventions of the Hague of 1899 and of 1907 and in the Washington Pact of 15 April 1935;

Being of the opinion that such protection cannot be effective unless both national and international measures have been taken to organise it in time of peace;

Being determined to take all possible steps to protect cultural property;

Having agreed upon the following provisions:

CHAPTER 1 : GENERAL PROVISIONS REGARDING PROTECTION

Article 1

DEFINITION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

For the purposes of the present Convention, the term 'cultural Property' shall cover, irrespective of origin or ownership:

(a) movable or immovable property of great importance to the cultural heritage of every people, such as monuments of architecture, art or history, whether religious or secular; archaeological sites; groups of buildings which, as a whole, are of historical or artistic interest; works of art; manuscripts, books and other objects of artistic, historical or archaeological interest; as well as scientific collections and important collections of books and archives or of reproductions of the property defined above;

(b) buildings whose main and effective purpose is to preserve or exhibit the movable cultural property defined in sub-paragraph (a) such as museums, large libraries and depositories of archives, and refuges intended to shelter, in the event of armed conflict, the movable cultural property defined in sub-paragraph (a).
c) centres containing a large amount of cultural property as defined in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b), to be known as 'centres containing monuments'.

Article 2
PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

For the purposes of this present Convention, the protection of cultural property shall comprise the safeguarding of and respect for such property.

Article 3
SAFEGUARDING OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

The High Contracting Parties undertake to prepare in time of peace for the safeguarding of cultural property situated within their own territory against the foreseeable effects of an armed conflict, by taking such measures as they consider appropriate.

Article 4
RESPECT FOR CULTURAL PROPERTY

The High Contracting Parties undertake to respect cultural property situated within their own territory as well as within the territory of other High Contracting Parties by refraining from any use of the property and its immediate surroundings or of the appliances in use for its protection for purposes which are likely to expose it to destruction or damage in the event of armed conflict; and by refraining from any act of hostility directed against such property.

The obligations mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present Article may be waived only in cases where military necessity imperatively requires such a waiver.

The High Contracting Parties further undertake to prohibit, prevent and, if necessary, put a stop to any form of theft, pillage or misappropriation of, and any acts of vandalism directed against, cultural property. They shall refrain from requisitioning movable cultural property situated in the territory of another High Contracting Party.

They shall refrain from any act directed by way of reprisals against cultural property.

No High Contracting Party may evade the obligations incumbent upon it under the present Article, in respect of another High Contracting Party, by reason of the fact that the latter has not applied the measures of safeguard referred to in Article 3.

Article 5
OCCUPATION

Any High Contracting Party in occupation of the whole or part of the
tendency of another High Contracting Party shall, as far as possible, support the competent national authorities of the occupied country in safeguarding and preserving its cultural property.

Should it prove necessary to take measures to preserve cultural property situated in occupied territory and damaged by military operations, and should the competent national authorities be unable to take such measures, the Occupying Power shall, as far as possible, and in close cooperation with such authorities, take the most necessary measures of preservation.

Any High Contracting Party whose government is considered their legitimate government by members of a resistance movement shall, if possible, draw their attention to the obligation to comply with those provisions of the Convention dealing with respect for cultural property.

**Article 6**

**DISTINCTIVE MARKING OF CULTURAL PROPERTY**

In accordance with the provisions of Article 16, cultural property may bear a distinctive emblem so as to facilitate its recognition.

**Article 7**

**MILITARY MEASURES**

The High Contracting Parties undertake to introduce in time of peace into their military regulations or instructions such provisions as may ensure observance of the present Convention, and to foster in the members of their armed forces a spirit of respect for the culture and cultural property of all peoples.

The High Contracting Parties undertake to plan or establish in peacetime, within their armed forces, services or specialist personnel whose purpose will be to secure cultural property and to cooperate with the civilian authorities responsible for safeguarding it.

**CHAPTER 2 : SPECIAL PROTECTION**

**Article 8**

**GRANTING OF SPECIAL PROTECTION**

There may be placed under special protection a limited number of refuges intended to shelter movable cultural property in the event of armed conflict, of centres containing monuments and other immovable cultural property of very great importance, provided that they:

a) are situated at an adequate distance from any large industrial centre or from any important military objective constituting a vulnerable point, such as, for example, an aerodrome, broadcasting station, establishment engaged upon work of national defence, a port or railway station of relative importance, or a main line of communication;
b) are not used for military purposes.

A refuge for movable cultural property may also be placed under special protection, whatever its location, if it is so constructed that, in all probability, it will not be damaged by bombs.

A centre containing monuments shall be deemed to be used for military purposes whenever it is used for the movement of military personnel or material, even in transit. The same shall apply whenever activities directly connected with military operations, the stationing of military personnel, or the production of war material are carried out within the centre.

The guarding of cultural property mentioned in paragraph 1 above by armed custodians specially empowered to do so, or the presence in the vicinity of such cultural property, of police forces normally responsible for the maintenance of public order, shall not be deemed to be use for military purposes.

If any cultural property mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present Article is situated near an important military object as defined in the said paragraph, it may nevertheless be placed under special protection if the High Contracting Parties asking for that protection undertakes, in the event of armed conflict, to make no use of the objective and particularly in the case of a port, railway station or aerodrome, to divert all traffic therefrom. In that event, such diversion shall be prepared in time of peace.

Special protection is granted to cultural property by its entry in the 'International Register of Cultural Property under Special Protection'. This entry shall only be made, in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention, and under the conditions provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

Article 9

IMMUNITY OF CULTURAL PROPERTY UNDER SPECIAL PROTECTION

The High Contracting Parties undertake to ensure the immunity of cultural property under special protection by refraining, from the time of entry into the International Register, from any act of hostility directed against such property, and except for the cases provided for in paragraph 5 of Article 8, from any use of such property or its surroundings for military purposes.

Article 10

IDENTIFICATION AND CONTROL

During an armed conflict, cultural property under special protection shall be marked with a distinctive emblem described in Article 16, and shall be open to international control as provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.
Article 11

WITHDRAWAL OF IMMUNITY

If one of the High Contracting Parties commits, in respect of any item of cultural property under special protection, a violation of the obligations under Article 9, the opposing Party shall, so long as this violation persists, be released from the obligation to ensure the immunity of the property concerned. Nevertheless, whenever possible, the latter Party shall first request cessation of such violation within a reasonable time.

Apart from the case provided for in paragraph 1 of the present Article, immunity shall be withdrawn from the cultural property under special protection only in exceptional cases of unavoidable military necessity, and only for such time as that necessity continues. Such necessity can be established only by the officer commanding a force the equivalent of a division in size or larger. Whenever circumstances permit, the opposing Party shall be notified, a reasonable time in advance, of the decision to withdraw immunity.

The Party withdrawing immunity shall, as soon as possible, inform the Commissioner-General for Cultural Property provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention, in writing, stating the reasons.

CHAPTER 3: TRANSPORT OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 12

TRANSPORT UNDER SPECIAL PROTECTION

Transport exclusively engaged in the transfer of cultural property, whether within a territory or to another territory, may, at the request of the High Contracting Party concerned, take place under special protection in accordance with the conditions specified in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

Transport under special protection shall take place under the international supervision provided for in the aforesaid Regulations, and shall display the distinctive emblem described in Article 16.

The High Contracting Parties shall refrain from any act of hostility directed against transport under special protection.

Article 13

TRANSPORT IN URGENT CASES

If a High Contracting Party considers that the safety of certain cultural property requires its transfer and that the matter is of such urgency that the procedure laid down in Article 12 cannot be followed, especially at the beginning of an armed conflict, the transport may display the distinctive emblem described in Article 16, provided that an application for immunity referred to in Article 12 has not already been made and refused. As far as possible, notification of transfer should be made.
to the opposing Parties. Nevertheless, transport conveying cultural property to the territory of another country may not display the distinctive emblem unless immunity has been expressly granted to it.

The High Contracting Parties shall take, so far as possible, the necessary precautions to avoid acts of hostility directed against the transport described in paragraph 1 of the present Article and displaying the distinctive emblem.

Article 14
IMMUNITY FROM SEIZURE, CAPTURE AND PRIZE

Immunity from seizure, placing in prize, or capture shall be granted to:

a) cultural property enjoying the protection provided for in Article 12 of that provided for in Article 13;

b) the means of transport exclusively engaged in the transfer of such cultural property.

Nothing in the present Article shall limit the right of visit and search.

CHAPTER 4 : PERSONNEL

Article 15
PERSONNEL

As far as is consistent with the interests of security, personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property shall, in the interests of such property, be respected and, if they fall into the hands of the opposing Party, shall be allowed to continue to carry out their duties whenever the cultural property for which they are responsible has also fallen into the hands of the opposing Party.

CHAPTER 5 : THE DISTINCTIVE EMBLEM

Article 16
EMBLEM OF THE CONVENTION

The distinctive emblem of the Convention shall take the form of a shield, pointed below, per saltire blue and white (a shield consisting of a royal blue square, one of the angles of which forms the point of the shield, and of a royal blue triangle above the square, the space on either side being taken up by a white triangle).

The emblem shall be used alone, or repeated three times in a triangular formation (one shield below), under the conditions provided for in Article 17.
Article 17

USE OF THE EMBLEM

The distinctive emblem repeated three times may be used only as a means of identification of:

a) immovable cultural property under special protection;
b) the transport of cultural property under conditions provided for in Articles 12 and 13;
c) impoverished refuges, under the provisions provided for in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

The distinctive emblem may be used alone only as a means of identification of:

a) cultural property not under special protection;
b) the persons responsible for the duties of control in accordance with the Regulations for the execution of the Convention;
c) the personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property; and
d) the identity cards mentioned in the Regulations for the execution of the Convention.

During an armed conflict, the use of the distinctive emblem in any other cases than those mentioned in the preceding paragraphs of the present Article, and the use for any purpose whatever of a sign resembling the distinctive emblem, shall be forbidden.

The distinctive emblem may not be placed on any immovable cultural property unless at the same time there is displayed an authorisation duly dated and signed by the competent authority of the High Contracting Party.

CHAPTER 6: SCOPE OF APPLICATION OF THE CONVENTION

Article 18

APPLICATION OF THE CONVENTION

Apart from the provisions which shall take effect in time of peace, the present Convention shall apply in the event of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties, even if the state of war is not recognised by one or more of them.

The Convention shall apply to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets no armed resistance.
If one of the Powers in conflict is not a Party to the present Convention the Powers which are Parties thereto shall nevertheless remain bound by it in their mutual relations. They shall furthermore be bound by the Convention in relation to the said Power if the latter has declared that it accepts the provisions thereof and so long as it applied them.

Article 19

CONFLICTS OF AN INTERNATIONAL CHARACTER

In the event of an armed conflict not of an international character occurring within the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties, each party to the conflict shall be bound to apply, as a minimum, the provisions of the present Convention which relate to respect for cultural property.

The parties to the conflict shall endeavour to bring into force, by means of special agreements, all or part of the other provisions of the present Convention.

The United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may offer its services to the parties to the conflict.

The application of the preceding provisions shall not affect the legal status of parties to the conflict.

CHAPTER 7 : EXECUTION OF THE CONVENTION

Article 20

REGULATIONS FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE CONVENTION

The procedure by which the present Convention is to be applied is defined in the Regulations for its execution, which constitute an integral part thereof.

Article 21

PROTECTING POWERS

The present Convention and the Regulations for its execution shall be applied with the cooperation of the Protecting Powers responsible for safeguarding the interests of the Parties to the conflict.

Article 22

CONCILIATION PROCEDURE

The Protecting Powers shall lend their good offices in all cases where they may deem it useful in the interests of cultural property, particularly if there is disagreement between the parties to the conflict as to the application or interpretation of the provisions of the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution.
For this purpose, each of the Protecting Powers may, either at the invitation of one party, of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), or on its own initiative, propose to the parties to the conflict a meeting of their representatives, and in particular of the authorities responsible for the protection of cultural property, if considered appropriate on suitably chosen neutral territory. The parties to the conflict shall be bound to give effect to the proposals for meeting made to them. The Protecting Powers shall propose for approval by the parties to the conflict a person belonging to a neutral power or a person presented by the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), which person shall be invited to take part in such a meeting in the capacity of Chairman.

Article 23

ASSISTANCE OF UNESCO

The High Contracting Parties may call upon the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) for technical assistance in organising the protection of their cultural property, or in connection with any other problem arising out of the application of the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution. The Organisation shall accord such assistance within the limits fixed by its programme and by its resources.

The organisation is authorised to make, on its own initiative, proposals on this matter to the High Contracting Parties.

Article 24

SPECIAL AGREEMENTS

The High Contracting Parties may conclude special agreements for all matters concerning which they deem it suitable to make separate provision.

No special agreement may be concluded which would diminish the protection afforded by the present Convention to cultural property and to the personnel engaged in its protection.

Article 25

DISSEMINATION OF THE CONVENTION

The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of armed conflict, to disseminate the text of the present Convention and Regulations for its execution as widely as possible in their respective countries. They undertake, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmes of military and, if possible, civilian training, so that its principles are made known to the whole population, especially the armed forces and personnel engaged in the protection of cultural property.
Unesco 1954 Convention (cont.)

Article 26

TRANSLATIONS, REPORTS

The High Contracting Parties shall communicate to one another, through the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), the official translations of the present Convention and of the Regulations for its execution.

Furthermore, at least once every four years, they shall forward to the Director-General a report giving whatever information they think suitable concerning any measures being taken, prepared or contemplated by their respective administrations in fulfilment of the present Convention and of the Regulations for its execution.

Article 27

MEETINGS

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may, with the approval of the Executive Board, convene meetings of representatives of the High Contracting Parties. He must convene such a meeting if at least one-fifth of the High Contracting Parties so request.

Without prejudice to any other functions which have been conferred on it by the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution, the purpose of the meeting will be to study problems concerning the application of the Convention and of the Regulations for its execution, and to formulate recommendations in respect thereof.

The meeting may further undertake a revision of the Convention or the Regulations for its execution if the majority of the High Contracting Parties are represented, and in accordance with the provisions of Article 39.

Article 28

SANCTIONS

The High Contracting Parties undertake to take, within the framework of their ordinary criminal jurisdiction, all necessary steps to prosecute and impose penal or disciplinary sanctions upon those persons, of whatever nationality, who commit or order to be committed a breach of the present Convention.

CHAPTER 8 : FINAL PROVISIONS

Article 29

LANGUAGES

The present Convention is drawn up in English, French, Russian and Spanish, the four texts being equally authoritative.
The United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall arrange for translations of the Convention into the other official languages of its General Conference.

Article 30

SIGNATURE

The present Convention shall bear the date of 14 May 1954 and, until the date of 31 December 1954, shall remain open for signature by all States invited to the Conference which met at the Hague from 21 April 1954 to 14 May 1954.

Article 31

RATIFICATION

The present Convention shall be subject to ratification by Signatory States in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.

The instruments of ratification shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

Article 32

ACCESSION

From the date of its entry into force, the present Convention shall be open for accession by all the States mentioned in Article 30 which have not signed it, as well as any other State invited to accede by the Executive Board of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

Article 33

ENTRY INTO FORCE

The present Convention shall enter into force three months after five instruments of ratification have been deposited.

Thereafter, it shall enter into force, for each High Contracting Party, three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification or accession.

The situations referred to in Articles 18 and 19 shall give immediate effect to ratifications or accessions deposited by the Parties to the conflict either before or after the beginning of hostilities or occupation. In such cases the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall transmit the communications referred to in Article 33 by the speediest method.
**Article 34**

**EFFECTIVE APPLICATION**

Each State Party to the Convention on the date of its entry into force shall take all necessary measures to ensure its effective application within a period of six months after such entry into force.

This period shall be six months from the date of deposit of the instruments of ratification or accession for any State which deposits its instruments of ratification or accession after the date of entry into force of the Convention.

**Article 35**

**TERRITORIAL EXTENSION OF THE CONVENTION**

Any High Contracting Party may, at the time of ratification or accession, or at any time thereafter, declare by notification addressed to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), that the present Convention shall extend to all or any of the territories for whose international relations it is responsible. The said notification shall take effect three months after the date of its receipt.

**Article 36**

**RELATION TO PREVIOUS CONVENTIONS**

In the relations between Powers which are bound by the Conventions of the Hague concerning the Laws and Customs of War on Land (IV) and concerning Naval Bombardment in Time of War (IX), whether those of 29 July 1899 or those of 18 October 1907, and which are Parties to the present Convention, this last Convention shall be supplementary to the aforementioned Convention (IX), and to the Regulations annexed to the aforementioned Convention (IV), and shall substitute for the emblem described in Article 5 of the aforementioned Convention (IX) the emblem described in Article 16 of the present Convention, in cases in which the present Convention and the Regulations for its execution provide for the use of this distinctive emblem.

In the relations between Powers which are bound by the Washington Pact of 15 April 1935 for the Protection of Artistic and Scientific Institutions and Historic Monuments (Roerich Pact) and which are Parties to the present Convention shall be supplementary to the Roerich Pact and shall substitute for the distinguishing flag described in Article III of the Pact, the emblem defined in Article 16 of the present Convention and the Regulations for its execution provided for the use of this distinctive emblem.

**Article 37**

**DENUNCIATION**

Each High Contracting Party may denounce the present Convention, on its own behalf or on behalf of any territory for whose international relations it is responsible.
Unesco 1954 Convention (cont.)

The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The denunciation shall take effect one year after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. However, if, on the expiry of this period, the denouncing Party is involved in an armed conflict, the denunciation shall not take effect until the end of hostilities, or until the operations of repatriating cultural property are completed, whichever is the later.

Article 38

NOTIFICATIONS

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall inform the States referred to in Articles 30 and 32, as well as the United Nations (UN), of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification, accession or acceptance provided for in Articles 31, 32 and 39, and of the notifications and denunciations provided for respectively in Articles 35, 37 and 39.

Article 39

REVISION OF THE CONVENTION AND OF THE REGULATIONS FOR ITS EXECUTION

Any High Contracting Party may propose amendments to the present Convention or the Regulations for its execution. The text of any proposed amendment shall be communicated to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) who shall transmit it to each High Contracting Party with the request that such Party shall reply within four months stating whether it:

a) desires that a Conference be convened to consider the proposed amendment;

b) favours the acceptance of the proposed amendment without a Conference; or

c) favours the rejection of the proposed amendment without a Conference.

The Director-General shall transmit the replies, received under paragraph 1 of the present Article, to all High Contracting Parties.

If all the High Contracting Parties which have, within the prescribed time limit, stated their views to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), pursuant to paragraph 1 (b) of this Article, inform him that they favour acceptance of the amendment without a Conference, notification of their decision shall be made by the Director-General in accordance with Article 38. The amendment shall become effective for all the High Contracting Parties on the expiry of ninety days from the date of such notification.
The Director-General shall convene a Conference of the High Contracting Parties to consider the proposed amendment if requested to do so by more than one-third of the High Contracting Parties.

Amendments to the Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, dealt with under the provisions of the preceding paragraph, shall enter into force only after they have unanimously adopted by the High Contracting Parties represented at the Conference and accepted by each of the High Contracting Parties.

Acceptance by the High Contracting Parties of amendments to the Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, which have been adopted by the Conference mentioned in paragraphs 4 and 5, shall be effected by the deposit of a formal instrument with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

After entry into force of amendment to the present Convention or to the Regulations for its execution, only the text of the Convention or of the Regulations for its execution thus amended, shall remain open for ratification or accession.

Article 40

REGISTRATION

In accordance with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations (UN), the present Convention shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations (UN) at the request of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

IN FAITH WHENCEOF, the undersigned, duly authorised, have signed the present Convention.

Done at the Hague, this fourteenth day of May 1954, in a single copy which shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), and certified true copies of which shall be delivered to all the States referred to in Articles 30 and 32 as well as to the United Nations (UN).

The High Contracting Parties are agreed as follows:

I

Each High Contracting Party undertakes to prevent the exportation, from a territory occupied by it during an armed conflict, of cultural property as defined in Article 1 of the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict, signed at the Hague on 14 May 1954.

Each High Contracting Party undertakes to take into its custody cultural property imported into its territory either directly or indirectly from any occupied territory. This shall either be effected automatically upon the importation of the property or, failing this, at the request of the authorities of that territory.

Each High Contracting Party undertakes to return, at the close of hostilities, to the competent authorities of the territory previously occupied, cultural property which is in its territory, if such property has been exported in contravention of the principle laid down in the first paragraph. Such property shall never be retained as war reparations.

The High Contracting Parties whose obligation it was to prevent the exploitation of cultural property from the territory occupied by it, shall pay an indemnity to the holders in good faith of any cultural property which has to be returned in accordance with the preceding paragraph.

II

Cultural property coming from the territory of the High Contracting Party and deposited by it in the territory of another High Contracting Party for the purpose of protecting such property against the dangers of an armed conflict, shall be returned to the latter at the end of hostilities, to the competent authorities of the territory from which it came.

III

The present Protocol shall bear the date of 14 May 1954 and, until the date of 31 December 1954, shall remain open for signature by all States invited to the Conference which met at the Hague from 21 April 1954 to 14 May 1954.

The present Protocol shall be subject to ratification by signatory States in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures. The instruments of ratification shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).
From the date of its entry into force, the present Protocol shall open for accession by all States mentioned in paragraph 6 which have not signed it as well as any other State invited to accede by the Executive Board of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The States referred to in paragraphs 6 and 8 may declare, at the time of signature, ratification or accession, that they will not be bound by the provisions of Section I or by those of Section II of the present Protocol.

The present Protocol shall enter into force three months after five instruments of ratification have been deposited. Thereafter, it shall enter into force for each High Contracting Party three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification or accession. The situations referred to in Articles 18 and 19 of the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict, signed at the Hague on 14 May 1954, shall give immediate effect to ratifications and accessions deposited by the Parties to the conflict either before or after the beginning of hostilities or occupation. In such cases, the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall transmit the communications referred to in paragraph 14 by the speediest method.

Each State Party to the Protocol on the date of its entry into force shall take all necessary measures to ensure its effective application within a period of six months after such entry into force. This period shall be six months from the date of deposit of ratification or accession for any State which deposits its instruments of ratification or accession after the date of the entry into force of the Protocol.

Any High Contracting Party may, at the time of ratification or accession, or at any time thereafter, declare by notification addressed to the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), that the present Protocol shall extend to all or any of the territories for whose international relations it is responsible. The said notification shall take effect three months after the date of its receipt.

Each High Contracting Party may denounce the present Protocol, on its own behalf or on behalf of any territory for whose international relations it is responsible. The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). The denunciation shall take effect one year after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. However, if, on the expiry of this period, the denouncing Party is involved in an armed conflict, the denunciation shall not take effect until the end of hostilities, or until the operations of repatriating cultural property are completed, whichever is the later.

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall inform the States referred to in paragraphs 6 and 8, as well as the United Nations (UN), of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification accession or acceptance provided for in paragraphs 7, 8 and 15 and the notifications provided for respectively in paragraphs 12 and 13.
The present Protocol may be revised if revision is requested by more than one-third of the High Contracting Parties. The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall convene a Conference for this purpose. Amendments to the present Protocol shall enter into force only after they have been unanimously adopted by the High Contracting Parties represented at the Conference and accepted by each of the High Contracting Parties. Acceptance by the High Contracting Parties of amendments to the present Protocol, which have been adopted by the Conference shall be effected by the deposit of a formal instrument with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). After entry into force of amendments to the present Protocol, only the text of the said Protocol thus amended shall remain open for ratification or accession.

In accordance with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations (UN), the present Protocol shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations (UN) at the request of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

IN FAITH WHEREOF, the undersigned, duly authorised, have signed the present Protocol.
APPENDIX NO. 9


The General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco), meeting in Paris from 12 October to 14 November 1970, at its sixteenth session;

Recalling the importance of the provisions contained in the Declaration of the Principles of International Cooperation adopted by the General Conference at its fourteenth session;

Considering that the interchange of cultural property among nations for scientific, cultural and educational purposes increases the knowledge of the civilisation of man, enriches the cultural life of all peoples, and inspires mutual respect and appreciation among nations;

Considering that cultural property constitutes one of the basic elements of civilisation and national culture, and that its true value can be appreciated only in relation to the fullest possible information regarding its origin, history and traditional setting;

Considering that it is incumbent upon every state to protect the cultural property existing within its territory against the dangers of theft, clandestine excavation, and illicit export;

Considering that, to avert these dangers, it is essential for every state to become increasingly alive to the moral obligations to respect its own cultural heritage and that of all nations;

Considering that, as cultural institutions, museums, libraries and archives should ensure that their collections are built up in accordance with universally recognised moral principles;

Considering that the illicit import, export and transfer of ownership of cultural property is an obstacle to that understanding between nations which is part of Unesco's mission to promote by recommending to interested states, international conventions to this end;

Considering that the protection of cultural heritage can be effective only if organised both nationally and internationally among states working in close cooperation;

Considering that the Unesco General Conference adopted a Recommendation to this effect in 1964;

Having before it further proposals on the means of preventing the illicit import, export and transfer of ownership of cultural property, a question which is on the agenda for the session as item 19;

Having decided at its fifteenth session, that this question should be made the subject of an International Convention

Adopts this Convention on the fourteenth day of November 1970.

535
Article 1

For the purposes of this Convention, the term 'cultural property' means property which, on religious or secular grounds, is specifically designated by each State as being of importance for archaeology, prehistory, history, literature, art or science and which belongs to the following categories:

a) Rare collections and specimens of fauna, flora, minerals and anatomy, and objects of palaeontological interest;

b) property relating to history, including the history of science and technology, and military and social history, to the life of national leaders, thinkers, scientists and artists, and to events of national importance;

c) products of archaeological excavations (including regular and clandestine) or of archaeological discoveries;

d) elements of artistic or historical monuments or archaeological sites which have been dismembered;

e) antiquities more than one hundred years old, such as inscriptions, coins and engraved seals;

f) objects of ethnological interest;

g) property of artistic interest, such as: (i) pictures, paintings and drawings produced entirely by hand on any support and in any material (excluding industrial designs and manufactured articles decorated by hand); (ii) original works of statuary art and sculpture in any material; (iii) original engravings, prints and lithographs; and (iv) original artistic assemblages and montages in any material;

h) rare manuscripts and incunabula, old books, documents and publications of special interest (historical, artistic, scientific, literary, etc.), singly or in collections;

i) postage, revenue and similar stamps, singly or in collections;

j) archives, including sound, photographic and cinematographic archives; and

k) articles of furniture more than one hundred years old and old musical instruments.

Article 2

The States Parties to this Convention recognise that the illicit import, export and transfer of ownership of cultural heritage of the countries or origin of such property and that international cooperation constitutes one of the most efficient means of protecting each country's cultural property against all the dangers resulting therefrom.

To this end, the States Parties undertake to oppose such practices with the means at their disposal, and particularly by removing their causes, putting a stop to current practices, and by helping to make the necessary reparations.
Article 3

The import, export or transfer of ownership of cultural property effected contrary to the provisions adopted under this Convention by the States Parties thereto, shall be illicit.

Article 4

The States Parties to this Convention recognise that for the purpose of the Convention, property which belongs to the following categories forms part of the cultural heritage of each State:

a) Cultural property created by the individual or collective genius of nations of the State concerned, and cultural property of importance to the State concerned created within the territory of that State by foreign nationals or stateless persons resident within such territory;

b) cultural property found within the national territory;

c) cultural property acquired by archaeological, ethnological or natural science missions, with the consent of the competent authorities of the country of origin of such property;

d) cultural property which has been the subject of a freely agreed exchange;

e) cultural property received as a gift or purchased legally with the consent of the competent authorities of the country of origin of such property.

Article 5

To ensure the protection of their cultural property against illicit import, export and transfer of ownership, the States Parties to this Convention undertake, as appropriate for each country, to set up within their territories one or more national services, where such services do not already exist, for the protection of the cultural heritage, with a qualified staff sufficient in number for the effective carrying-out of the following functions:

a) Contributing to the formation of draft laws and regulations designed to secure the protection of the cultural heritage, and particularly prevention of the illicit import, export and transfer of ownership of important cultural property;

b) establishing and keeping up to date, on the basis of a national inventory of protected property, a list of important public and private cultural property whose export would constitute an appreciable impoverishment of the national cultural heritage;

c) promoting the development or establishment of scientific and technical institutions (museums, libraries, archives, laboratories, workshops, etc.) required to ensure the preservation of cultural property;
d) organising the supervision of archaeological excavations, ensuring the preservation 'in situ' of certain cultural property and protecting certain areas reserved for future archaeological research;

e) establishing, for the benefit of those concerned (curators, collectors, antique dealers, etc.) rules in conformity with the ethical principles set forth in this Convention, and taking steps to ensure the observance of these rules;

f) taking educational measures to stimulate and develop respect for the cultural heritage of all States, and spreading knowledge of the provisions of this Convention; and

g) seeing that appropriate publicity is given to the disappearance of ant items of cultural property.

Article 6

The States Parties to this Convention undertake:

a) To introduce an appropriate certificate in which the exporting state would specify that the export of the cultural property in question is authorised. The certificate should accompany all items of cultural property in accordance with the regulations;

b) to prohibit the exportation of cultural property from their territory unless accompanied by the above mentioned export certificate;

c) to publicise this prohibition by appropriate means, particularly among persons likely to export or import cultural property.

Article 7

The States Parties to this Convention undertake:

a) To take the necessary measures, consistent with national legislation, to prevent museums and similar institutions within their territories from acquiring cultural property originating in another Party State which has been illegally exported after entry into force of this Convention in the States concerned. Whenever possible, to inform a state of origin party to this Convention of an offer of such cultural property illegally removed from that state after the entry into force of this Convention in both states;

b) i) to prohibit the import of cultural property stolen from a museum or a religious or secular public monument or similar institution in another State Party to this Convention after the entry into force of this Convention for the States concerned, provided that such property is documented as pertaining to the inventory of that institution; and
b) ii) at the request of the State Party of origin, to take appropriate steps to recover and return any such cultural property imported after the entry into force of this Convention in both States concerned, provided, however, that the requesting State shall pay just compensation to an innocent purchaser or to a person who has valid title to that property. Requests for recovery and return shall be made through diplomatic offices. The requesting Party shall furnish, at its expense, the documentation and other evidence necessary to establish its claim for recovery and return. The Parties shall impose no customs duties or other charges upon cultural property returned pursuant to this Article. All expenses incident to the return and delivery of the cultural property shall be borne by the requesting Party.

Article 8

The States Parties to this Convention undertake to impose penalties or administrative sanctions on any person responsible for infringing the prohibitions referred to under Articles 6(b) and 7(b) above.

Article 9

Any State Party to this Convention whose cultural patrimony is in jeopardy from pillage of archaeological or ethnological materials may call upon other States Parties who are affected. The States Parties to this Convention undertake, in these circumstances, to participate in a concerned international effort to determine and to carry out the necessary concrete measures, including the control of exports and imports and international commerce in the specific materials concerned. Pending agreement, each State concerned shall take provisional measures to the extent feasible to prevent irreparable injury to the cultural heritage of the requesting State.

Article 10

The States Parties to this Convention undertake:

a) To restrict by education, information and vigilance, movement of cultural property illegally removed from and State Party to this Convention and, as appropriate for each country, oblige antique dealers, subject to penal or administrative sanctions, to maintain a register recording the origin of each item of cultural property, names and addresses of the supplier, description and price of each item sold, and to inform the purchaser of the cultural property of the export prohibition to which such property may be subject;

b) to endeavour by educational means to create and develop in the public mind a realization of the value of cultural property and the threat to the cultural heritage created by theft, clandestine excavations and illicit exports.
Unesco 1970 Convention (cont.)

Article 11

The export and transfer of ownership of cultural property under compulsion arising directly or indirectly from the occupation of a country by a foreign power shall be regarded as illicit.

Article 12

The States Parties to this Convention shall respect the cultural heritage within the territories for the international relations of which they are responsible, and shall take all appropriate measures to prohibit and prevent the illicit import, export and transfer of ownership of cultural property in such territories.

Article 13

The States Parties to this Convention also undertake, consistent with the laws of each State:

a) To prevent by all appropriate means, transfers of ownership of cultural property likely to promote the illicit import or export of such property;

b) to ensure that their competent services cooperate in facilitating the earliest possible restitution of illicitly exported cultural property to its rightful owner;

c) to admit actions for recovery of lost or stolen items of cultural property brought by or on behalf of the rightful owners;

d) to recognise the indefeasible right of each State Party to this Convention to classify and declare certain cultural property as inalienable which should therefore, ipso facto, not be exported, and to facilitate recovery of such property by the State concerned in cases where it has been exported.

Article 14

In order to prevent illicit export and to meet the obligations arising from implementation of this Convention, each State Party to the Convention should, as far as it is able, provide the national services responsible for the protection of its cultural heritage, with an adequate budget and, if necessary, should set up a fund for this purpose.

Article 15

Nothing in this Convention shall prevent States Parties thereto from concluding special agreements among themselves from continuing to implement agreement already concluded regarding the restitution of cultural property removed, whatever the reason, from its territory of origin before the entry into force of this Convention for the States concerned.
Article 16

The States Parties to this Convention shall, in their periodic reports submitted to the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) on dates and in a manner to be determined by it, give information on the legislative and administrative provisions which they have adopted and other actions they have taken for the application of this Convention, together with details of the experience acquired in this field.

Article 17

The States Parties to this Convention may call on the technical assistance of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), particularly as regards:

a) Information and education;

b) consultation and expert advice; and

c) coordination and good offices.

The United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may, on its own initiative, conduct research and publish studies on matters relevant to the illicit movement of cultural property.

To this end, the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may also call on the cooperation of any competent non-governmental organisation.

The United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may, on its own initiative, make proposals to States Parties to this Convention for its implementation.

At the request of at least two States Parties to this Convention which are engaged in a dispute over its implementation, the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) may extend its good offices to reach a settlement between them.

Article 18

This Convention is drawn up in English, French, Russian and Spanish, the four texts being equally authoritative.

Article 19

This Convention shall be subject to ratification or acceptance by States Members of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.

The instruments of ratification or acceptance shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).
Article 20

This Convention shall be open to accession by all States not members of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) which are invited to accede to it by the Executive Board of the Organisation.

Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

Article 21

The Convention shall enter into force three months after the date of deposit of the third instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession, but only with respect to those States which have deposited their instruments on or before that date. It shall enter into force with respect to any other State three months after the deposit of its instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession.

Article 22

The States Parties to this Convention recognise that the Convention is applicable not only to their metropolitan territories but also to all territories for the international relations of which they are responsible; they undertake to consult if necessary, the governments or other competent authorities of these territories on or before ratification, acceptance or accession, with a view to securing the application of the Convention to those territories, and to notify the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation of the territories to which it is applied, the notification to take effect three months after the date of its receipt.

Article 23

Each State Party to this Convention may denounce the Convention on its own behalf or on behalf of any territory for whose international relations it is responsible.

The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The denunciation shall take effect twelve months after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation.

Article 24

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall inform the States Members of the Organisation, the States not members of the Organisation which are referred to in Article 20, as well as the United Nations (UN), of the deposit of all the instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession provided for in Articles 19 and 20, and of the notifications and denunciations provided for in Articles 22 and 23 respectively.
This Convention may be revised by the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). Any such revision shall, however, bind only the States which shall become Parties to the revised convention.

If the General Conference should adopt a new convention revising this Convention in whole or in part, then unless the new convention otherwise provides, this Convention shall cease to be open to ratification, acceptance or accession, as from the date on which the revising convention enters into force.

IN FAITH WHEREOF, we have appended our signatures this sixteenth day of November 1970.

The President of the Conference

The Director-General

Certified Copy, Paris.

Director, Office of International Standards and Legal Affairs,
United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)

The General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), meeting in Paris from 17 October to 21 November 1972, at its seventeenth session;

Noting that the cultural heritage and the natural heritage are increasingly threatened with destruction not only by the traditional causes of decay, but also by changing social and economic conditions which aggravate the situation with even more formidable phenomena of damage or destruction;

Considering that deterioration or disappearance of any item of the cultural or natural heritage constitutes a harmful impoverishment of the heritage of all the nations of the world;

Considering that protection of this heritage at the national level often remains incomplete because of the scale of the resources which it requires and of the insufficient economic, scientific and technical resources of the country where the property to be protected is situated;

Recalling that the Constitution of the Organisation provides that it will retain, increase and diffuse knowledge, by assuring the conservation and protection of the world's heritage, and recommending to the nations concerned the necessary international conventions;

Considering that the existing international conventions, recommendations and resolutions concerning cultural and natural property demonstrate the importance, for all the peoples of the world, of safeguarding this unique and irreplaceable property, to whatever people it may belong;

Considering that parts of the cultural or natural heritage are of outstanding interest and therefore need to be preserved as part of the world heritage of mankind as a whole;

Considering that, in view of the magnitude and gravity of the new dangers threatening them, it is incumbent on the international community as a whole to participate in the protection of the cultural and natural heritage of outstanding universal value, by the granting of collective assistance which, although not taking the place of action by the State concerned, will serve as an effective complement thereto;

Considering that it is essential for this purpose to adopt new provisions in the form of a convention establishing an effective system of collective protection of the cultural and natural heritage of outstanding universal value, organised on a permanent basis and in accordance with modern scientific methods;

Having decided, at its sixteenth session, that this question should be made the subject of an international convention;

Adopts this sixteenth day of November 1972 this Convention.
1. DEFINITIONS OF THE CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE

Article 1

For the purposes of this Convention, the following shall be considered as 'cultural heritage':

Monuments: architectural works, works of monumental sculpture, elements or structures of an archaeological nature, inscriptions, cave dwellings and combinations of features, which are of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art or science;

Groups of Buildings: groups of separate or connected buildings which, because of their architecture, their homogeneity or their place in the landscape, are of outstanding universal value from the point of view of history, art or science; and

Sites: works of man or the combined works of nature and of man, and areas including archaeological sites which are of outstanding universal value from the historic, aesthetic, ethnological or anthropological points of view.

Article 2

For the purposes of this Convention, the following shall be considered as 'natural heritage':

Natural features consisting of physical and biological formations or groups of such formations, which are of outstanding universal value from the aesthetic or scientific point of view;

Geological and physiographical formations and precisely delineated areas which constitute the habitat of threatened species of animals and plants of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science or conservation; and

Natural sites of precisely delineated natural areas of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science, conservation or natural beauty.

Article 3

It is for each State Party to this Convention to identify and delineate the different properties situated on its territory mentioned in Articles 1 and 2.

2. NATIONAL PROTECTION AND INTERNATIONAL PROTECTION OF THE CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE

Article 4

Each State Party to this Convention recognises the duty of ensuring the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and transmission
to future generations of the cultural and natural heritage referred to in Articles 1 and 2 and situated on its territory, belongs primarily to that State. It will do all it can to this end, to the utmost of its own resources and, where appropriate, with any international assistance and cooperation, in particular, financial, artistic, scientific and technical, which it may be able to obtain.

Article 5

To ensure that effective and active measures are taken for the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage situated on its territory, each State Party to this Convention shall endeavour, in so far as possible, as appropriate for each country:

a) To adopt a general policy which aims to give the cultural and natural heritage a function in the life of the community and to integrate the protection of that heritage into comprehensive planning programmes;

b) to set up within its territories, where such services do not exist, one or more services for the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage with an appropriate staff and possessing the means to discharge their functions;

c) to develop scientific and technical studies and research and to work out such operating methods as will make the State capable of counteracting the dangers that threaten its cultural or natural heritage;

d) to take the appropriate legal, scientific, technical, administrative and financial measures necessary for the identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of this heritage; and

e) to foster the establishment or development of national or regional training centres for training in the protection, conservation and presentation of the cultural and natural heritage and to encourage scientific research in this field.

Article 6

Whilst fully respecting the sovereignty of the States on whose territory the cultural and natural heritage mentioned in Articles 1 and 2 is situated, and without prejudice to property rights provided by national legislation, the States Parties to this Convention recognise that such heritage constitutes a world heritage for whose protection it is a duty of the international community as a whole to cooperate.

The States Parties undertake, in accordance with the provisions of this Convention, to give their help in the identification, protection, conservation and preservation of the cultural and natural heritage referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11 if the States on whose territory it is situated so request.
Each State Party to this Convention undertakes not to take any deliberate measures which might damage directly or indirectly the cultural and natural heritage referred to in Articles 1 and 2 situated on territory of other States Party to this Convention.

Article 7

For the purpose of this Convention, international protection of the world cultural and natural heritage shall be understood to mean the establishment of a system of international cooperation and assistance designed to support States Parties to the Convention in their efforts to conserve and identify that heritage.

3. INTERGOVERNMENTAL COMMITTEE FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE WORLD CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE

Article 8

An intergovernmental Committee for the Protection of the Cultural and Natural Heritage of Outstanding Universal Value, called the 'World Heritage Committee' is hereby established within the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). It shall be composed of 15 States Parties to the Convention, elected by States Parties to the Convention meeting in General Assembly during the ordinary session of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). The number of States members of the Committee shall be increased to 21 as from the date of the ordinary session of the General Conference following the entry into force of this Convention for at least 40 States.

Election of members of the Committee shall ensure an equitable representation of the different regions and cultures of the world.

A representative of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (the Rome Centre), a representative of the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS), and a representative of the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), to whom it may be added, at the request of the States Parties to the Convention meeting in general assembly during the ordinary sessions of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), representatives of other intergovernmental and non-governmental organisations with similar objectives, may attend the meetings of the Committee in an advisory capacity.

Article 9

The term of office of States members of the World Heritage Committee shall extend from the end of the ordinary session of the General Conference during which they are elected until the end of its third ordinary session.

The term of office of one-third of the members designated at the time of the first election shall, however, cease at the end of the first ordinary session of the General Conference following that at which they were
elected; and the term of office of a further third of the members designated at the same time shall cease at the end of the second ordinary session of the General Conference following that at which they were elected. The names of these members shall be chosen by lot by the President of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) after the first session.

States members of the Committee shall choose as their representatives persons qualified in the field of the cultural or natural heritage.

**Article 10**

The World Heritage Committee shall adopt its Rules of Procedure.

The Committee may at any time invite public or private organisations or individuals to participate in its meetings for consultation on particular problems.

The Committee may create such consultative bodies as it deems necessary for the performance of its functions.

**Article 11**

Every State Party to this Convention shall, in so far as possible, submit to the World Heritage Committee an inventory of property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage situated in its territory and suitable for inclusion in the list provided for in paragraph 2 of this Article. This inventory, which shall not be considered exhaustive, shall include documentation about the location of the property in question and its significance.

On the basis of the inventories submitted by States in accordance with paragraph 1, the Committee shall establish, keep up to date and publish, under the title 'World Heritage List', a list of properties forming part of the cultural and natural heritage as defined in Articles 1 and 2 of this Convention, which it considers as having outstanding universal value in terms of such criteria as it shall have established. An updated list shall be distributed at least every two years.

The inclusion of a property in the World Heritage List requires the consent of the State concerned. The inclusion of a property situated in a territory, sovereignty or jurisdiction over which is claimed by more than one State, shall in no way prejudice the rights of the parties to the dispute.

The Committee shall establish, keep up to date and publish, whenever circumstances so require, under the title 'List of World Heritage in Danger', a list of the property appearing in the World Heritage List for the conservation of which major operations are necessary, and for which assistance has been requested under this Convention. This list shall contain an estimate of the cost of such operations. The list may include only such property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage as is threatened by serious and specific dangers, such as the threat of disappearance caused by accelerated deterioration, large-scale public or private projects or rapid urban or tourist development projects;
Unesco 1972 Convention (cont.)

destruction caused by changes in the use or ownership of the land; major alterations due to unknown causes; abandonment for any reason whatsoever; the outbreak or the threat of an armed conflict; calamities and cataclysms; serious fires, earthquakes, landslides, volcanic eruptions, changes in water level, floods and tidal waves. The Committee may at any time, in case of urgent need, make a new entry in the list of World Heritage in Danger and publicise such entry immediately.

The Committee shall define the criteria on the basis of which a property belonging to the cultural or natural heritage may be included in either of the lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this Article.

Before refusing a request for inclusion in one of the two lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this Article, the Committee shall consult the State Party in whose territory the cultural or natural property in question is situated.

The Committee shall, with the agreement of the States concerned, coordinate and encourage the studies and research needed for the drawing up of the lists referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of this Article.

Article 12

The fact that a property belonging to the cultural or natural heritage has not been included in either of the two lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 21 shall in no way be construed to mean it does not have an outstanding universal value for purposes other than those resulting from inclusion in these lists.

Article 13

The World Heritage Committee shall receive and study requests for international assistance formulated by States Parties to this Convention with respect to property forming part of the cultural or natural heritage situated in their territories and included or potentially suitable for inclusion in the lists referred to in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 21. The purpose of such requests may be to secure the protection, conservation, presentation or rehabilitation of such property.

Requests for international assistance under paragraph 1 of this Article may also be concerned with identification of cultural or natural property defined in Articles 1 and 2, when preliminary investigations have shown that further inquiries would be justified.

The Committee shall decide upon the action to be taken with regard to these requests, determine where appropriate the nature and extent of its assistance, and authorise the conclusion on its behalf of the necessary arrangements with the government concerned.

The Committee shall determine an order of priorities for its operations. It shall in so doing, bear in mind the respective importance for the world cultural and natural heritage of the property requiring protection, the need to give international assistance to the property most representative of a natural environment or of the genius and history of the peoples of the world, the urgency of the work to be done, the resources
available to the States on whose territory the threatened property is situated, and, in particular, the extent to which they are able to safeguard such property by their own means.

The Committee shall draw up, keep up to date and publish a list of property for which international assistance has been granted.

The Committee shall decide on the use of the resources of the Fund established under Article 15 of this Convention. It shall seek ways of increasing these resources and shall take all useful steps to this end.

The Committee shall cooperate with international and national governmental and non-governmental organisations having objectives similar to those of this Convention. For the implementation of its programmes and projects, the Committee may call on such organisations, particularly the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (the Rome Centre), the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) and the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), as well as on public and private bodies and individuals.

Decisions of the Committee shall be taken by a majority of two-thirds of its members present and voting. A majority of the members of the Committee shall constitute a quorum.

Article 14

The World Heritage Committee shall be assisted by a Secretariat appointed by the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), utilising to the fullest extent possible the services of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and Restoration of Cultural Property (the Rome Centre), the International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS), and the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) in their respective areas of competence and capability, shall prepare the Committee's documentation and the agenda of its meetings, and shall have the responsibility for the implementation of its decisions.

4. FUND FOR THE PROTECTION OF THE WORLD CULTURAL AND NATURAL HERITAGE.

Article 15

A Fund for the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage of Outstanding Universal Value, called the 'World Heritage Fund', is hereby established.

The Fund shall constitute a trust fund, in conformity with the provisions of the Financial Regulations of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The resources of the Fund shall consist of:

a) Compulsory and voluntary contributions made by the States
Parties to this Convention:

b) contributions, gifts or bequests which may be made by:
   i) other States;
   ii) the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), other organisations of the United Nations (UN) system, particularly the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) or other intergovernmental organisations; and
   iii) public or private bodies or individuals;

c) any interest due on the resources of the Fund;

d) funds raised by collections and receipts from events organised for the benefit of the Fund; and

e) all other resources authorised by the Fund's regulations, as drawn up by the World Heritage Committee.

Contributions to the Fund and other forms of assistance made available to the Committee may be used only for such purposes as the Committee shall define. The Committee may accept contributions to be used for a certain programme or project, provided that the Committee shall have decided on the implementation of such programme or project. No political conditions may be attached to contributions made to the Fund.

Article 16

Without prejudice to any supplementary voluntary contribution, the States Parties to this Convention undertake to pay regularly, every two years, to the World Heritage Fund, contributions, the amount of which, in the form of a uniform percentage applicable to all States, shall be determined by the General Assembly of States Parties to the Convention, meeting during the sessions of the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). This decision of the General Assembly requires the majority of States Parties present and voting, which have not made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article. In no case shall the compulsory contribution of States Parties to the Convention exceed 1% of the contribution to the Regular Budget of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

However, each State referred to in Article 31 or 32 of this Convention may declare, at the time of the deposit of its instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession, that it shall not be bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of the Article.

A State Party to the Convention which has made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article may at any time withdraw the said declaration by notifying the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). However, the withdrawal of the declaration shall not take effect in regard of the compulsory contribution due by the State until the date of the subsequent General Assembly of the States Parties to the Convention.

In order that the Committee may be able to plan its operation effectively, the contributions of the States Parties to this Convention which have
made the declaration referred to in paragraph 2 of this Article, shall be paid on a regular basis, at least every two years, and should not be less than the contributions which they should have paid if they had been bound by the provisions of paragraph 1 of this Article.

Any State Party to the Convention which is in arrears with the payment of its compulsory or voluntary contribution for the current year and the calendar year immediately preceding it shall not be eligible as a member of the World Heritage Committee, although this provision shall not apply in the first election.

The terms of office of any State which is already a member of the Committee shall terminate at the time of the elections provided for in Article 8, paragraph 1 of this Convention.

Article 17

The States Parties to this Convention shall consider or encourage the establishment of national, public and private foundations or associations whose purpose is to invite donations for the protection of the cultural and natural heritage as defined in Articles 1 and 2 of this Convention.

Article 18

The States Parties to this Convention shall give their assistance to international fund-raising campaigns organised for the World Heritage Fund under the auspices of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). They shall facilitate collections made by the bodies mentioned in paragraph 3 of Article 15 for this purpose.

5. CONDITIONS FOR ARRANGEMENTS FOR INTERNATIONAL ASSISTANCE

Article 19

Any State Party to this Convention may request international assistance for property forming part of the cultural or natural heritage of outstanding universal value situated within its territory. It shall submit with its request such information and documentation provided for in Article 21 as it has in its possession and as will enable the Committee to come to a decision.

Article 20

Subject to the provisions of paragraph 2 of Article 13, sub-paragraph (c) of Article 22 and Article 23, international assistance provided for by this Convention may be granted only to property forming part of the cultural and natural heritage which the World Heritage Committee has decided, or may decide, to enter in one of the lists mentioned in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11.
Unesco 1972 Convention (cont.)

Article 21

The World Cultural Heritage Committee shall define the procedure by which requests to it for international assistance shall be considered and shall specify the content of the request, which should define the operation contemplated, the work that is necessary, the expected cost thereof, the degree of urgency and the reasons why the resources of the State requesting assistance do not allow it to meet all the expenses. Such requests must be supported by expert's reports whenever possible.

Requests based upon disasters or natural calamities should, by reason of the urgent work which they may involve, be given immediate priority consideration by the Committee, which should have a reserve fund at its disposal against such contingencies.

Before coming to a decision, the Committee shall carry out such studies and consultations as it deems necessary.

Article 22

Assistance granted by the World Heritage Committee may take the following forms:

a) Studies concerning the artistic, scientific and technical problems raised by the protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage, as defined in paragraphs 2 and 4 of Article 11 of this Convention;

b) provision of experts, technicians and skilled labour to ensure that the approved work is correctly carried out;

c) training of staff and specialists at all levels in the field of identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage;

d) supply of equipment which the States concerned does not possess or is not in a position to acquire;

e) low-interest or interest-free loans which might be repayable on a long-term basis; and

f) the granting, in exceptional cases and for special reasons, of non-repayable subsidies.

Article 23

The World Heritage Committee may also provide international assistance to national or regional centres for the training of staff and specialists at all levels in the field of identification, protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the cultural and natural heritage.
Article 24

International assistance on a large scale shall be preceded by detailed scientific, economic and technical studies. These studies shall draw upon the most advanced techniques for the protection, conservation, presentation and rehabilitation of the natural and cultural heritage consistent with the objectives of this Convention. The studies shall also seek means of making rational use of the resources available in the State concerned.

Article 25

As a general rule, only part of the cost of the work necessary shall be borne by the international community. The contribution of the State benefitting from international assistance shall constitute a substantial share of the resources devoted to each programme or project, unless its resources do not permit this.

Article 26

The World Heritage Committee and the recipient State shall define in the agreement they conclude the conditions in which a programme or project for which international assistance under the terms of this Convention is provided, shall be carried out. It shall be the responsibility of the State receiving such international assistance to continue to protect, conserve and present the property so safeguarded, in observance of the conditions laid down by the agreement.

6. Educational Programmes

Article 27

The States Parties to this Convention shall endeavour by all appropriate means, and in particular by educational and information programmes, to strengthen appreciation and respect by their peoples of the cultural and natural heritage defined in Articles 1 and 2 of the Convention.

They shall undertake to keep the public broadly informed of the dangers threatening this heritage and of activities carried on in pursuance of this Convention.

Article 28

States Parties to this Convention which receive international assistance under the Convention shall take appropriate measures to make known the importance of the property for which assistance has been received and the role played by such assistance.

7. Reports

Article 29

The States Parties to this Convention shall, in the reports which they submit to the General Conference of the United Nations Educational
Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) on dates and in a manner to be determined by it, give information on the legislative and administrative provisions which they have adopted and other actions which they have taken for the application of this Convention, together with details of the experience acquired in the field.

These reports shall be brought to the attention of the World Heritage Committee.

The Committee shall submit a report on its activities at each of the ordinary sessions of the Central Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

8. FINAL CLAUSES

Article 30

This Convention is drawn up in Arabic, English, French, Russian, and Spanish, the five texts being equally authoritative.

Article 31

This Convention shall be subject to ratification or acceptance by States members of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) in accordance with their respective constitutional procedures.

The instruments of ratification or acceptance shall be deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

Article 32

This Convention shall be open to accession by all States not members of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) which are invited by the General Conference of the Organisation to accede to it.

Accession shall be effected by the deposit of an instrument of accession with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

Article 33

This Convention shall enter into force three months after the date of deposit of the twentieth instrument of ratification, acceptance or accession, but only with respect to those States which have deposited their respective instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession on or before that date. It shall enter into force with respect to any other State three months after the deposit of its instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession.
Article 34

The following provisions shall apply to those States Parties to this Convention which have a federal or non-unitary constitutional system:

a) With regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the legal jurisdiction of the federal or central legislative power, the obligations of the federal or central government shall be the same as for those States Parties which are not federal States; and

b) with regard to the provisions of this Convention, the implementation of which comes under the legal jurisdiction of individual constituent States, countries, provinces or cantons that are not obliged by the constitutional system of the federation to take legislative measures, the federal government shall inform the competent authorities of such States, countries, provinces or cantons of the said provisions, with its recommendations for their adoption.

Article 35

Each State Party to the Convention may denounce the Convention.

The denunciation shall be notified by an instrument in writing, deposited with the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).

The denunciation shall take effect twelve months after the receipt of the instrument of denunciation. It shall not affect the financial obligations of the denouncing State until the date on which withdrawal takes effect.

Article 36

The Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) shall inform the States members of the Organisation which are referred to in Article 32, as well as the United Nations (UN), of the deposit of all instruments of ratification, acceptance or accession provided for in Articles 31 and 32, and of the denunciations provided for in Article 35.

Article 37

This Convention may be revised by the General Conference of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). Any such revision shall, however, bind only the States which shall become Parties to the revising convention.

Article 38

In conformity with Article 102 of the Charter of the United Nations (UN), this Convention shall be registered with the Secretariat of the United Nations (UN) at the request of the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO).
Done in Paris, this twenty-third day of November 1972, in two authentic copies bearing the signatures of the President of the seventeenth session of the General Conference and the Director-General of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO), which shall be deposited in the archives of the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) and certified true copies of which shall be delivered to all the States referred to in Articles 31 and 32 as well as to the United Nations (UN).

IN FAITH WHEREOF, we have appended our signatures this twenty-third day of November 1972.

The President of the Conference

The Director-General

Certified Copy, Paris.

Director, Office of International Standards and Legal Affairs,
United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)
APPENDIX NO. 11

INTERNATIONAL CHARTER FOR THE CONSERVATION AND RESTORATION OF MONUMENTS AND SITES, VENICE, MAY 1964.

Imbued with a message from the past, the historic monuments of generations of people remain to the present day as living witnesses of their age-old traditions. People are becoming more and more conscious of the unity of human values and regard ancient monuments as a common heritage. The common responsibility to safeguard them for future generations is recognised. It is our duty to hand them on in the full richness of their authenticity.

It is essential that the principles guiding the preservation and restoration of ancient buildings should be agreed and laid down on an international basis, with each country being responsible for applying the plan within the framework of its own culture and traditions.

By defining these basic principles for the first time, the Athens Charter of 1931 contributed towards the development of an extensive international movement which has assumed concrete form in national documents, in the work of ICOM and UNESCO, and in the establishment by the latter of the International Centre for the Study of the Preservation and the Restoration of Cultural Property. Increasing awareness and critical study have been brought to bear on problems which have continually become more complex and varied; now the time has come to examine the Charter afresh in order to make a thorough study of the principles involved, and to enlarge its scope in a new document.

Accordingly, the IIInd International Congress of Architects and Technicians of Historic Monuments, which met in Venice from May 25th to 31st 1964, approved the following text:

DEFINITIONS

Article 1

The concept of an historic monument embraces not only the single architectural work but also the urban or rural setting in which is found the evidence of a particular civilisation, a significant development or an historic event. This applies not only to great works of art but also to more modest works of the past which have acquired cultural significance with the passing of time.

Article 2

The conservation and restoration of monuments must have recourse to all the sciences and techniques which can contribute to the study and safeguarding of the architectural heritage.

Article 3

The intention in conserving and restoring monuments is to safeguard them no less as works of art than as historical evidence.
Article 4

It is essential to the conservation of monuments that they be maintained on a permanent basis.

Article 5

The conservation of monuments is always facilitated by making use of them for some socially useful purpose. Such use is therefore desirable but it must not change the layout or decoration of the building. It is within these limits only that modifications demanded by a change of function should be envisaged and may be permitted.

Article 6

The conservation of a monument implies preserving a setting which is not out of scale. Wherever the traditional setting exists, it must be kept. No new construction, demolition or modification which would alter the relations of mass and colour must be allowed.

Article 7

A monument is inseparable from the history to which it bears witness and from the setting in which it occurs. The moving of all or part of a monument cannot be allowed except where the safeguarding of that monument demands it or where it is justified by national or international interests of paramount importance.

Article 8

Items of sculpture, painting or decoration which form an integral part of a monument may only be removed from it if this is the sole means of ensuring their preservation.

RESTORATION

Article 9

The process of restoration is a highly specialised operation. Its aim is to preserve and reveal the aesthetic and historical value of the monument and is based on respect for original material and authentic documents. It must stop at the point where conjecture begins, and in this case, moreover, any extra work which is indispensable must be distinct from the architectural composition and must bear a contemporary stamp. The restoration in any case must be preceded and followed by an archaeological and historical study of the monument.
Where traditional techniques prove inadequate, the consolidation of a monument can be achieved by the use of any modern technique for conservation and construction, the efficacy of which has been shown by scientific data and proved by experience.

The valid contributions of all periods to the building of a monument must be respected, since unity of style is not the aim of restoration. When a building includes the superimposed work of different periods, the revealing of the underlying state can only be justified in exceptional circumstances and when what is removed is of little interest, and the material which is brought to bear is of great historical, archaeological or aesthetic value, and its state of preservation good enough to justify the action. Evaluation of the importance of the elements involved and the decision as to what may be destroyed cannot rest solely on the individual in charge of the work.

Replacements of missing parts must integrate harmoniously with the whole, but at the same time must be distinguishable from the original so that restoration does not falsify the artistic or historic evidence.

Additions cannot be allowed except in so far as they do not detract from the interesting parts of the building, its original setting, the balance of its composition and its relation with its surroundings.

The sites of monuments must be the object of special care in order to safeguard their integrity and ensure that they are cleared and presented in a seemly manner. The work of conservation and restoration carried out in such places should be inspired by the principles set forth in the foregoing articles.

Excavations should be carried out in accordance with scientific standards and the Recommendation defining international principles to be applied in the case of archaeological excavations adopted by UNESCO in 1956.
Ruins must be maintained and measures necessary for the permanent conservation and protection of architectural features and of objects discovered must be taken. Furthermore, every means must be taken to facilitate the understanding of the monument and to reveal it without ever distorting its meaning.

All reconstruction work should, however, be ruled out a priori. Only anastylosis, that is to say, the reassembling of existing but dismembered parts can be permitted. The material used for integration should always be recognisable and its use should be the least that will ensure the conservation of a monument and the reinstatement of its form.

**Publication**

**Article 16**

In all works of preservation, restoration or excavation, there should always be precise documentation in the form of analytical and critical reports, illustrated with drawings and photographs.

Every stage of the work of clearing, consolidation, rearrangement and integration, as well as technical and formal features identified during the course of the work, should be included. This record should be placed in the archives of a public institution and made available to research workers. It is recommended that the report should be published.
PREAMBLE

We, the Peoples of Southeast Asia,

DESIROUS of attaining the benefits of peace, prosperity and security through an enlightened citizenry,

RECOGNIZING the forces and the challenge of change in the contemporary world,

ANXIOUS to provide for constructive direction to the forces of change, and

RESOLVED upon joint and cooperative efforts, for regional educational development,

HAVE, through our Governments, adopted hereby this Charter of the Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Organisation.

Article 1

PURPOSE AND FUNCTIONS

1. The purpose of the Organisation is to promote cooperation among the Southeast Asian nations through education, science and culture in order to further respect for justice, for the rule of law and for the human rights and fundamental freedoms which are birthrights of the peoples of the world.

2. To realize this purpose the Organisation will:

   a) Collaborate in the work of advancing the mutual knowledge and understanding of the peoples in Southeast Asia as well as the rest of the world;

   b) Promote and collaborate with the Member States, at their request, in joint projects and programmes of mutual benefit concerning education, science and culture and assist the members in the development of educational activities;

   c) Maintain, increase and diffuse knowledge;

   d) Assist in articulating education to the economic and social goals in the individual Member States.

3. With a view to preserving the independence, integrity and fruitful diversity of the cultures and educational systems of the Member States, the Organisation is prohibited from intervening in matters which are essentially within their domestic jurisdiction.
Article 2

MEMBERSHIP

1. The original Member States of this Organisation shall be:
   Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore,
   Thailand and the Republic of Viet-Nam.

2. Southeast Asian States not members of this Organisation may be
   admitted as Member States by a two-third majority vote of the
   Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Council.

3. The Organisation my admit Associate Members under terms and
   conditions determined by the Council.

4. Any Member State of the Organisation may withdraw from the Organi-
   sation by notice addressed to the Secretariat. Such notice shall
   take effect on 31 December of the year following the year during
   which the notice is given. Such withdrawal shall not affect the
   financial obligations owed to the Organisation on the date the
   withdrawal takes effect.

Article 3

ORGANS

The Organisation shall include a Southeast Asian Ministers of Education
Council and Secretariat.

Article 4

SOUTHEAST ASIAN MINISTERS OF EDUCATION COUNCIL

1. The Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Council, hereinafter
   referred to as the 'Council', shall consist of the Ministers of
   Education or accredited representatives of the Member States of
   the Organisation.

2. The Council shall determine the policies and the main lines of
   work of the Organisation.

3. The Council shall appoint the Director of the Secretariat.

4. The Council shall receive the reports of the Director and approve
   the programme and budget of the Organisation.

1. This is the first amendment to the 1968 Charter which was approved
   at the Seventh SEAMEC Conference at Vientiane in January 1972. The
   terms and conditions were approved by the Council at the Eighth
5. The presence of at least two-thirds of the Member States is necessary for the Council to do business. Each Member State shall have one vote. Decisions shall be made by a simple majority of the Member States present and voting, except in cases in which a two-third majority is required by the provision of this Charter.

6. The Council shall meet annually in ordinary session; it may meet in extraordinary session if it so decides or if called by at least one-third of the Member States.

7. At each session the location of its next ordinary session shall be designated by the Council. The location of the extraordinary session shall be designated by the Council, if the session is called by it, or otherwise by the Director after consultation with at least one-third of the Member States.

8. The Council shall adopt its own rules of procedure.

9. The Council shall, at the ordinary session of each year, elect a President and other officers.

10. The Council shall set up special and technical committees and such other subordinate bodies as may be necessary for its purposes.

Article 5

THE SECRETARIAT

1. The Secretariat of the Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Organisation shall be called 'The Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Secretariat' (SEAMEO), hereinafter referred to as the 'Secretariat'.

2. The Secretariat shall consist of a Director and such staff as may be required.

3. The Director shall be appointed by the Council under such terms and conditions as the Council may approve, and shall be eligible for reappointment. He shall be the chief administrative officer and the legal representative of the Organisation.

4. The Director shall appoint the staff of the Secretariat in accordance with staff regulations to be approved by the Council. Subject to the paramount consideration of securing the highest standard of integrity, efficiency and technical competence, appointment to the staff shall be on as wide a geographical basis as possible.

5. In determining the salaries of the professional staff, the international organisation scale shall be used.

6. The responsibilities of the Director and of the staff shall be exclusively international in character. In the discharge of their duties they shall not seek or receive instructions from any government or from any authority external to the Organisation. They shall refrain from any action which might prejudice their position as international officials. Each Member State of the
Organisation undertakes to respect the international character of the responsibilities of the Director and staff, and not to seek to influence them in the discharge of their duties.

7. The Secretariat shall perform, under the authority of the Council, the following functions:
   a) Implement the policies and execute the programmes adopted by the Council;
   b) Plan and study the feasibility of regional education project proposals;
   c) Hold conferences and seminars;
   d) Promote the utilisation of academic facilities and professional competence within the region through exchange of students, faculty members, professional personnel and instructional materials;
   e) Administer small or temporary projects or centres of regional significance;
   f) Help secure financial support for the Organisation from interested countries, organisations or other sources;
   g) Cooperate with other organisations and agencies in matters of common interest; and
   h) Carry out all other assignments given by the Council.

8. The Director shall prepare the agenda for the Council. The Director shall submit to the Council the programmes of work for the Organisation and corresponding budget estimates together with such recommendations as he considers desirable.

9. The Director shall prepare and communicate to the Member States and to the Council periodical reports on the activities of the Organisation. The Council shall determine the period to be covered by these reports.

Article 6

BUDGET

1. The budget shall be administered by the Council.

2. The Council shall approve and give final effect to the budget and to the apportionment of financial responsibility among the Member States of the Organisation.

3. The Director, with the approval of the Council and on behalf of the Organisation, may receive gifts, bequests, and subventions directly from Governments, public and private associations, and private persons.
Article 7

RELATIONS WITH OTHER INTERNATIONAL ORGANISATIONS AND AGENCIES

1. This Organisation may cooperate with other specialised regional and international organisations and agencies whose interests and activities are related to its purposes. To this end the Director, acting under the general authority of the Council, may establish effective working relationships with such organisations and agencies and make arrangements for establishing such joint committees as may be necessary to ensure effective cooperation. Any formal arrangements entered into with such organisations and agencies shall be subject to the approval of the Council.

2. This Organisation shall make appropriate arrangements with other specialised regional and international organisations and agencies for reciprocal representation at meetings.

3. This Organisation may make suitable arrangements for consultation and cooperation with governmental and non-governmental organisations and agencies concerned with matters within its competence, and may invite them to undertake specific tasks.

Article 8

LEGAL STATUS OF THE ORGANISATION

1. The Organisation shall possess full juridicial personality and, in particular, full capacity:
   a) to contract;
   b) to acquire, and dispose of, immovable and movable cultural property; and
   c) to institute legal proceedings.

2. The Organisation shall enjoy in the territory of each of its Member States such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the fulfilment of its purposes.

3. Representatives of the Member States and officials of the Organisation shall similarly enjoy such privileges and immunities as are necessary for the independent exercise of their functions in connection with the Organisation.

Article 9

AMENDMENTS

1. Proposals for amendments to this Charter shall become effective upon receiving the approval of a two-third majority of the Member States. The draft texts of the proposed amendments shall be communicated by the Director to the Member States at least six months in advance of their consideration by the Council.
2. The Council shall have the power to adopt, by a two-thirds majority of the Member States present and voting, rules of procedure for carrying out the provisions of this Article.

Article 10

INTERPRETATION

Any question or dispute concerning the interpretation of this Charter shall be decided by the Council.

Article 11

ENTRY INTO FORCE

1. This Charter shall be subject to acceptance. The instruments of acceptance shall be deposited with the Royal Government of Thailand.

2. This Charter shall come into force when it has been accepted by five of the original Member States. Subsequent acceptances shall come into effect immediately.

3. The said Government will inform all the Member States of the receipts of all instruments of acceptance and of the date on which the Charter comes into force in accordance with the preceding paragraph.

IN FAITH WHEREOF, the undersigned, duly authorised to that effect, have signed this Charter.

DONE in the capital city of Singapore the 7th day of February, one thousand nine hundred and sixty-eight, in a single copy, in the English language, of which certified copies will be communicated by the Royal Government of Thailand to the Governments of all the Member States.

INDONESIA: Soemantri Hardjoprakoso
LAOS: Leucca Insisienmay
MALAYSIA: Mohammad Khir Johari
THE PHILIPPINES: Carlos P. Romulo
SINGAPORE: Ong Pang Boon
THAILAND: Pin Malakul
REPUBLIC OF VIET-NAM: Nguyen Van Tho
APPENDIX NO.13

RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE ICOM MEETING OF EXPERTS TO STUDY THE ETHICAL RULES GOVERNING MUSEUM ACQUISITIONS, PARIS, APRIL 1970.

The International Council of Museums (ICOM) Meeting of Experts to Study the Ethical Rules Governing Museum Acquisitions, held in Paris, on 8-10 April 1970, adopted the undernoted resolutions based upon the following fundamental principle:

"...Whatever the subject matter or discipline of the museum and wherever it may be situated in the world, certain principles of ethics and professional integrity in relation to acquisition can be presumed to be applicable. Briefly, this means there must be a full, clear and satisfactory documentation in relation to the origin of any object to be acquired. This is quite as important for an object generally classified in the category of art as for an object of archaeology, of ethnology, or of national and natural history..."

Resolutions

1. The museum of today is not a mere repository of objects: it is concerned with the acquisition of the objects as an integral part of a scientific programme of:
   a) scientific research,
   b) education,
   c) conservation,
   d) the demonstration of National and International, Natural and Cultural Heritage;

2. Some museums may encompass all aspects of this far-reaching programme, whilst others may specialise in certain parts of it. Consequently no object should be acquired which has no part to play in the aims of the museum as demonstrated by its programme;

3. The object being considered for acquisition may come from anywhere within a wide spectrum of definitions, the two extremes of which may be briefly summarised as being:
   a) objects recognised by scholarship and/or the community where they have their full cultural significance as having a unique quality and are therefore beyond value;
   b) objects which, though not necessarily rare in themselves, nevertheless have a value which derives from their cultural and natural environment;
4. The significance of the object (cultural and scientific) will depend upon its being fully documented. As a matter of principle no acquisition should be made without this full documentation, with the possible exception of certain objects which come near to that end of the spectrum characterised by definition (a) paragraph 3, when the essential documentation relative to the latter may be obtained by systematic research after acquisition;

5. In most fields, direct acquisitions are best obtained by scientifically conducted research missions. They may occur in the mission's own country or abroad. In the latter case they must be conducted with the agreement or the cooperation, and according to the laws of the host country;

6. Direct acquisitions can also be made through cooperation with a museum or with an institution responsible for the safeguard of the national cultural heritage, in the country possessing the required object. These same principles may also be profitably applied "autatis autandis" to objects which come near to that end of the spectrum characterised by definition (a), paragraph 3;

7. The object acquired by direct means is as well documented as possible; this is not always the case with indirect acquisitions. Whereas direct acquisitions conducted as described in paragraphs 5 and 6, will always conform to ethical standards, this may not always be the case with the indirect system;

8. The indirect acquisition, which includes the gift and bequest, is that which has been acquired through one, or more intermediaries. When a museum feels obliged to acquire an object indirectly, this should always be done in observance of the laws and interests of the country from which it is obtained, or the country of origin when the country from which it is obtained is only a place of commercial transit;

9. The responsibility of the museum professional in those museums which have as their primary function the preservation of the national heritage is threefold:

   a) to acquire and preserve for the country concerned a comprehensive collection illustrating all aspects of the nation's cultural heritage;

   b) to control the international movement of objects belonging to this heritage;

   c) to co-operate with foreign museums and other scientific institutions to ensure adequate representation of that culture on an international scale;

10. It is imperative that if the museum is to fulfil completely its roles in education and international understanding, its professional staff must observe the highest ethical standards not only in the very important process of acquisition but also in the other fields of their professional activity.
11. Museum programmes should be published. This will encourage exchange and outside help;

12. The acquisition of objects by any museum should not be limited to what is necessary for the exhibition halls, but sufficient objects should be collected for study and conservation purposes, for exchange with and for supply to local museums and for international exchange. However objects should never be accumulated solely for their commercial value;

13. Material for exchange should encompass objects of sufficiently high standard to attract objects of similar standard from other museums. Exchange should mean not merely object against object but also object against services and equipment;

14. Documentation acquired by a scientific expedition should be made available to the country in which the expedition was carried out, after a certain agreed period of time, during which the scientific rights are reserved to the discoverer. The same documentation should be made available under the same conditions to the museum in the country which organised the expedition;

15. With due regard to legal requirements and Unesco recommendations and conventions relative to sharing the products of field research, every endeavour should be made to respect the ecological association of a group of objects. Certain objects and collections are sometimes lent to a foreign museum or scientific institution for study purposes. On such occasion they should be returned to the institution to which they belong in the shortest time possible;

16. With due regard to legal requirements and Unesco recommendations and conventions, the museum which has reason to doubt the licit quality of a previously acquired object should contact the museum or other professional organisation in the country of origin with a view to examining, in each particular case, the steps which should be taken to best preserve the interests of both parties;

17. If a museum is offered objects, the licit quality of which it has reason to doubt, it will contact the competent authorities of the country or origin in an effort to help this country safeguard its national heritage;

18. Gifts and bequests should only be accepted with a proviso that in the event of any object proving to have been illicitly exported from another country, the authorities of the museum should be empowered to take action as above;

19. Museums of those countries which, by virtue of political or economic circumstances, hold an important part of the cultural property of countries which were not in a position to safeguard their cultural heritage adequately, should remind their authorities and collectors that they have a moral duty to assist in the future development of museums in these countries;
29. The museums of any country which bind themselves to follow the ethical rules and the practical proposals formulated in paragraphs 1 to 19 of this document, will agree to offer each other preferential treatment in all professional activities, compatible with the existing laws.

RESOLVED THAT:

The Archaeological Institute of America condemns the destruction of the historical and material record of the past by the plundering of archaeological sites both in the United States and abroad and by the illicit export and import of antiquities.

The Archaeological Institute of America supports wholeheartedly the UNESCO Draft Convention on the Means of Preventing and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property, and urges ratification of the Draft Convention by the United States Government at the earliest practicable moment. It further urges its members, individually and through the local societies of the Institute, to make their support of the Draft Convention felt by communications to the appropriate Governmental authorities.

The Archaeological Institute of America calls upon its members, as well as educational institutions (universities and museums) in the United States and Canada, to refrain from purchasing and accepting donations of antiquities exported from their countries of origin in contravention of the UNESCO Draft Convention.

The Archaeological Institute of America urges that, in accordance with the provisions of the UNESCO Draft Convention, concerned countries take practicable steps to facilitate the legitimate export, import and exchange of archaeological materials and antiquities.

The Archaeological Institute of America applauds the efforts of local authorities, both in the United States and abroad, to prevent the despoilation of archaeological sites and the illicit export and import of antiquities and archaeological materials, and pledges its support in such efforts.
APPENDIX NO.15

REPORT OF THE AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF MUSEUMS SPECIAL POLICY COMMITTEE, MAY 1971.

The Special Policy Committee of the American Association of Museums has given careful consideration to the Draft Convention of UNESCO on the Means of Prohibiting the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property.

We realize the importance of preservation of the patrimony of each country, and we recognize the need to halt the wanton destruction of archaeological sites by illegal excavators in search of salable antiquities. We also realize our responsibilities to our museums whose function is to collect, preserve, study and exhibit original works of art and antiquities.

Accordingly, on 5 October 1970, this Committee gave conditional approval to the UNESCO Draft Convention reserving the right to submit modifications at a later time before it is ratified by the United States Government.

Background

Cultural property can be divided broadly into two types. The first is the indigenous material produced in the country claiming control. This, of course, includes archaeological sites, ethnological works, objects of art and material of historic importance. The second type is composed of non-indigenous material which by happenstance is currently in the country. Many paintings and sculptures are housed in countries far removed from their place of origin. For instance, the Rosetta Stone and the Elgin Marbles are in England, the Mona Lisa is in France, and the Pergamon Altar is in Berlin. These ownerships represent the fortunes of war, the chance of purchase, and the success of an expedition. While they are now considered to be national patrimony, they are not indigenous.

We are used to considering the United States as a rich nation and many of the other nations of the world as the 'have nots'. But in the field of cultural property, because of comparatively recent founding, we must be considered a relative 'have not' and many of the financially poor nations as culturally rich.

There is also the consideration of archaeological material, both from the standpoint of aesthetic values and from that of scientific documentation. Indigenous masterpieces are objects of national importance and they must be kept in situ or in the local museums. However, we believe that it is highly important to international understanding that the historic and cultural resources of nations be known beyond the boundaries of the nations that produced them. This is particularly important in the United States where there are people who are proud of their ancestry.

If illegal excavation and smuggling are to be eradicated, it is mandatory that the culturally rich nations set up legal methods of controlled exportation of duplicate material. This could be done by direct sale, exchange or long term reciprocal loans. It is necessary that such arrangements be made simultaneously with the enforcement against illicit export. Only then will the vandal and the smuggler be stopped.
In regard to exportation of non-indigenous objects, most countries have export prohibitions on all major works. Objects are listed in a national register regardless of whether they are in a public or private collection. If a piece is to be sold and exported abroad, it must be approved by a government agency. In this area the United States is woefully vulnerable. Any piece of cultural property can be sold and exported freely from this country. Consequently, in recent years we have begun to experience a cultural drain as our works of art from private collections are being sold abroad in increasing numbers.

If now we are being asked to police the export of non-indigenous works from foreign countries, then we must enact similar prohibitions for the export of the cultural property from the United States. We must protect our patrimony too, but this is more than a case of quid pro quo. We will need cultural property which can be exchanged with foreign governments or deposited on long term loan in return for cultural works. Arrangements should be made for foreign sale of objects by review of a cultural property export board similar to the arrangements now in effect in Japan and England. The declared valuation for a sale would fix the price at which any United States institution would have the right of first purchase. If it were not exercised, the piece could be exported.

Recommendations

We urge individual and institutional members of the AAM to abstain from purchasing and accepting donations of antiquities from their country of origin in contravention to the terms of the UNESCO Draft Convention. This abstention is to apply only to antiquities from a country which has adopted the farsighted policy of making duplicate material available through legal channels, or has installed a procedure for granting export licences to material which has been approved by a board of review. We feel that this policy of combining both the abstention of questionable acquisitions, and the requirement of the foreign government to make available duplicate material is the most effective method of achieving the objective of safeguarding archaeological sites and preserving national art treasures.

John Veach Noble (Chairman),
Director, Museum of the City of New York.
Dr. William Bascom,
Director, Robert H. Lowie Museum of Anthropology.
Charles C. Cunningham,
Director, The Art Institute of Chicago.
Dr. Frederick J. Dobestader,
Director, Museum of the American Indian
Dudley T. Basby,
Chairman, Department of Primitive Art, Metropolitan Museum of Art.
Dr. Gordon S. Esholm,
Curator of Mexican Art (Pre-Columbian), American Museum of Natural History.
Dr. Sherman E. Lee,
Director, Cleveland Museum of Art.
Dr. Froelich Rainey,
Director, University Museum, University of Pennsylvania.

The Cultural and Social Centre for the Asian and Pacific Region (AS PAC) Experts Meeting on Preservation of the Cultural Heritage, held in Tokyo, Nara and Kyoto, from 31 May to 4 June 1971, passed the undernoted recommendations:

1. Considering the lack of professional and technical personnel capable of undertaking the preservation and conservation of national cultural heritage of the countries in the Asian and Pacific Region, and in view of the serious condition of the monuments in most of the ASPAC member countries;

It is recommended that every effort be made to establish a training and advisory programme within the region.

2. Considering the nature and volume of illicit traffic in national cultural property which is impoverishing the heritage of the nations in the region;

It is recommended that the ASPAC Cultural and Social Centre make every effort to initiate and organise an educational programme to stress the undesirability of this traffic and aimed at various sectors of society.

3. Considering the disappearance of cultural heritage without record due to rapid social and economic developments in the region;

It is recommended that a central documentation be established at the ASPAC Cultural and Social Centre with the co-operation of the member countries.

4. Considering the need to preserve the cultural heritage and save the arts and crafts in the region;

It is recommended that the status of traditional artists and craftsmen be improved by means of regional exhibitions coordinated by the Centre.

5. Considering the obvious value of this Experts Meeting;

It is strongly recommended that similar conferences be organised at frequent intervals.

6. Considering the possible need for urgent action to save certain aspects of cultural heritage;

It is recommended that the Centre should initiate and co-ordinate action within the region when necessary.
7. Recognising the achievements of the Centre since its foundation;

It is recommended that every effort be made to widen the basis of its work within the region.
RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE ICOM MEETING OF EXPERTS ON THE PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY IN SOUTHEAST ASIA, MALACCA, DECEMBER 1972.

The International Council of Museums (ICOM) Meeting of Experts on the Protection of Cultural Property in Southeast Asia, held in Malacca, Malaysia, on 12-13 December 1972, having been informed of the problems of illicit trafficking in cultural property, having discussed them, and being aware of the increasing loss of cultural property by the countries in Southeast Asia, passed the undernoted recommendations:

1. That since each of the countries of Southeast Asia is provided with national legislation for the protection of cultural property, the countries are enjoined to review such laws and to accept the recommendations of this meeting, and to enforce strictly these laws in order to protect their cultural heritage and to prevent the illicit trafficking and loss of cultural property;

2. That museums in Southeast Asia adopt a uniform system of classification and documentation of their property, following in general the Japanese Law No.214 of May 30, 1950, classifying tangible cultural property according to four categories -
   a) National Treasure;
   b) Very important cultural property;
   c) Important cultural property;
   d) Registered cultural property -

   and that system be followed by museums to facilitate the dissemination of information on cultural property in order that countries in this region may co-operate to protect the cultural heritage of Southeast Asia;

3. That all countries in Southeast Asia take immediate action to post at all entry and exit points summaries of laws regarding the restrictions on export of antiquities and cultural materials; further, that all countries in Southeast Asia also take the initiative to issue circulars to all foreign missions, to international and other foreign organisations, calling to their attention the existence of such laws; and further, instill in their own diplomatic corps the awareness that the preservation and protection of the cultural heritage is the concern of everyone; that the countries in Southeast Asia include the relevant provisions of the law, or summaries of such provisions, in all tourist brochures, and in official travel documents, such as immigration forms and landing cards, which are given to tourists and others;

4. That since the implementation of antiquities enactments in the countries of Southeast Asia is extremely urgent, and aware that the implementation of these enactments
is being impeded by shortage of competent personnel, the countries of Southeast Asia increase the administrative staff concerned in order to make effective the implementation of the enactments regarding the protection of cultural property;

5. That all museums in this region take urgent action to maintain illustrated registers of all their holdings of cultural property, publish catalogues to establish proof of ownership, and publicise such objects, using all available means, including the mass media; and further, that similar provisions be applied to private collections when feasible;

6. That antique and art shops and/or dealers be licensed by the National Museums or appropriate government agencies, so that a strict check may be kept on them to prevent illegal transactions, especially exportation of cultural property;

7. That all Unesco Member States in Southeast Asia study the Unesco International Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property (1970), and consider taking action to become signatories of the Convention;

8. That the countries in Southeast Asia be urged to review the existing acquisition budgets and acquisition policies of their museums and take urgent steps to acquire directly from all sources such cultural property deemed to be of national or local, cultural, historic and aesthetic importance, for the benefit of future generations;

9. That all exported antiquities and other cultural property be adequately documented by relevant authorities and that importing countries check these documents in consultation with National Museums or other appropriate authorities, when necessary;

10. That government agencies concerned with the issue of export licenses be requested to inform their National Museums of items of cultural property proposed to be exported before an export license be issued, to enable museums to purchase such items if necessary before they are lost to the nation concerned;

11. That all countries in Southeast Asia inform each other of their relevant export license procedures to ensure that illegal transactions in cultural property are prevented;

12. That countries in Southeast Asia consider formulating bilateral agreements with their neighbouring countries and the major importing countries to prevent illicit trafficking in cultural property;

13. That the countries of Southeast Asia notify ICOM-Paris, and each other, of dealers known to conduct illicit trade in cultural property;
14. That the countries of Southeast Asia use all available means, including the mass media, to educate their people on the importance of protection of cultural property; and further, especially educate those relevant authorities, such as the Customs Service and the Police, on the importance of protection of cultural property, so as to allow for the development of an effective policing force to preserve the national cultural heritage;

15. That ICOM consider sympathetically and encourage the formation of a regional association of museums to be called "Museums Association of Southeast Asia", with the following countries proposed as members: 1) Brunei; 2) Burma; 3) Hong Kong; 4) Indonesia; 5) Kimer Republic; 6) Laos; 7) Malaysia; 8) Philippines; 9) Singapore; 10) Thailand; 11) Vietnam, with initial country membership comprising those countries which are already ICOM members;

16. That museums of Southeast Asia observe the Ethics of Museum Acquisition.
As a result of their deliberation and in the light of data collected, the Sub-Committee on Monuments has defined the following as the most pressing dangers affecting the conservation of monuments and archaeological sites. They are outlined here in the order of their importance:

1. Dangers from the pressures of urbanisation and economic expansion;
2. Lack of technical expertise and lack of funds;
3. Biological (animal and vegetal) pollution, theft and vandalism;
4. Lack of survey and systematic research;
5. Natural disequilibrium, lack of craft skills, and misuse of monuments;
6. Inherent defects in the fabric, masonry, and faults in restoration; and
7. Chemical pollution.

In the light of these dangers, the following needs have been established in the order of their importance:

1. The need of collecting information relating to the conservation of monuments and archaeological sites, and other relevant information and their dissemination.

   In the process, the influence of public opinion may be sought in helping to overcome the dangers posed by the pressures of urban and economic expansion.

2. Coordination in fundamental research in such matters as:
   a) a standard procedure in the inventory of monuments;
   b) a system for grading monuments in order to establish priorities; and
   c) legislation which may be adopted at the regional level, etc.

3. The need to develop technical expertise among the Member Countries.
1. The Committee suggests that the establishment of ARCAFA should be carried out in the following phases:

**PHASE I**

- a) The collection and dissemination of information relating to the conservation of monuments and archaeological sites;
- b) The collection of information relating to monuments legislation conducive to the achievement of coordination at the regional level;
- c) Act as a coordinating centre for exploiting existing facilities within the region for training technicians;
- d) Plan for the establishment of an applied research centre and laboratory for conservation of cultural properties; and
- e) Establish the nucleus of a library.

**PHASE II**

- a) Establishment of the central laboratory for conservation of cultural properties and the applied research centre; and
- b) Formulation and implementation for a training programme of technicians.

**PHASE III**

- Establishment of other special technical services (which may be decentralised) in such fields as absolute dating, photogrammetry, palaeontology, palynology, etc.

2. It further recommends that the ARCAFA work through SEAMES to establish cooperation with other international organisations in carrying out its objectives.
APPENDIX NO.19

FINAL RESOLUTIONS OF THE SEAMES PREPARATORY CONFERENCE ON THE RESTORATION AND ANIMATION OF HISTORICAL SITES FOR THE PURPOSE OF ESTABLISHING AN APPLIED RESEARCH CENTRE FOR ARCHAEOLOGY AND FINE ARTS (ARCAFA) IN PHNOM PENH, PHNOM PENH, DECEMBER 1972.

The Preparatory Conference on the Restoration and Animation of Historical Sites for the Purpose of Establishing an Applied Research Centre for Archaeology and Fine Arts (ARCAFA) in Phnom-Penh:

1. Unanimously recommends the creation of ARCAFA in Phnom-Penh;

2. Acknowledging the generous offer of the Khmer Republic, requests this country to help in the establishment of ARCAFA;

3. Requests assistance from SEAMEC in the initiation of this project;

4. Recommends that the first body of ARCAFA be the Project Development Office;

5. Requests that this Office, with the assistance of the Member Countries of SEAMES, undertake its task in accordance with the guidelines adopted by this Conference.

SEAMES - Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Organisation.
SEAMEC - Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Council.
SEAMIES - Southeast Asian Ministers of Education Secretariat.
RESOLUTION OF THE SPECIAL COMMITTEE ON THE ETHICS OF ACQUISITION

BE IT RESOLVED:

That the Association of Art Museum Directors cooperate fully with foreign countries in their endeavours to prevent the illicit traffic in works of art.

The Association of Art Directors believes that member museums can best implement such cooperation by refusing to acquire through purchase, gift or bequest, objects of art imported into the United States or Canada in violation of the relevant laws obtaining in the countries of origin.

The directors, curators and governing bodies of member museums should, in determining the propriety of acquiring a given work of art, be governed by and act in accordance with the provisions adopted by States implementing the UNESCO Convention on the Means of Prohibiting the Illicit Export, Import and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property as ratified by appropriate governmental authority.

In the event of the governing board of a member museum believes it necessary to augment or further clarify the intent of this resolution and determine procedural methods for accomplishing the aim of this resolution, such a board should promulgate an appropriate acquisition policy statement commensurate with the by-laws and operational procedures of its institutions.

It is the recommendation of the members of this Association that all nations establish effective export laws and develop proper control over illegal export so that illicit traffic may be stopped at its sources. Wherever possible, within the limits of national law, encouragement should be given to a legitimate and honourable trade in works of art.

The United States and Canada are composed of peoples of many ethnic origins who take pride in their ethnic and cultural heritage. It is reasonable that these people desire to see these cultures represented in their local institutions. Therefore it is hoped that nations will release for acquisition, long-term loan or exchange duplicate material of high artistic quality for public display for the benefit of all people.

Members of the Special Committee:

Charles C. Cunningham (Chairman),
Chief Curator, Sterling and Francine Clark Art Institute,
Williamstown (former Director, Art Institute of Chicago).
Sherman E. Lee,
Director, Cleveland Museum of Art.
Laurence Sicilman,
Director, Nelson Gallery, Kansas City.
Daniel Robbins,
Director, Fogg Art Museum, Harvard University.
APPENDIX NO. 21


The United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) Intergovernmental Conference on Cultural Policies in Asia, held in Jogjakarta, on 10-19 December 1973, passed the undernoted recommendations:

CULTURAL POLICIES

"Recommendation No. 5

The Conference,

Recognising the ever-increasing interest of Asian countries in preserving and conserving their cultural monuments and historical sites,

Considering that it is the responsibility of public authorities in Member States to introduce effective measures to ensure the preservation and conservation of this cultural heritage,

I

Recommends to Asian Member States that in carrying out this task:

1. the integrity and identity of the cultural monuments and historical sites are not jeopardised through indiscriminate commercial exploitation;

2. these monuments and historical sites are used as centres for artistic expression - art exhibitions, festivals and other cultural activities;

II

Recommends to Unesco that it

assist, to the fullest extent possible, Asian Member States in ensuring the effective implementation of this recommendation."

TRAINING OF SPECIALISTS IN CULTURAL DEVELOPMENT

"Recommendation No. 23

The Conference,

Being convinced of the need to make every possible effort to preserve the cultural heritages of Asia and to ensure the widest possible opportunities for people to appreciate their value,

Noting the importance of guaranteeing the easiest possible access to such cultural heritages as one means of strengthening the recognition of national identity,
Considering that a large part of the population in many countries in Asia and Oceania live in rural areas,

Believing that traditional patterns of arts and crafts, in the countries of Asia and Oceania, represent elements that may serve cultural development,

Knowing that most of the developing countries in Asia and Oceania have a limited number of qualified cultural administrators, museum personnel, archaeologists, art historians, anthropologists and sociologists specialised in the field of sociology of art,

Recognising in particular the need to promote further museum activities in Asia, and to train specialists in preservation, restoration and the display of museum objects,

Recalling also the conclusions of the Round-Table Conference on Modernisation of Museum Activities in Asia (13-17 November 1973, Asian Cultural Centre for Unesco) which studied the effective ways and means for training museum staffs,

Recommends to Unesco that it

give more assistance, in the form of fellowships and training facilities, and encourage the development of national and sub-regional training centres, to improve the management, organisation and study of cultural development, and specially that it provide advice and support to the projects for the training of museum staff now under way in Asian countries."

CULTURAL CO-OPERATION

"Recommendation No.27

The Conference,

Recognising the need for co-operation between States in the same region with a view to finding solutions to the problems which such States have in common,

Considering that the study, knowledge and protection of the cultural heritage in the various countries belonging to a given region promote mutual understanding between peoples and contribute to their socio-economic and cultural development,

Being of the opinion that national efforts to safeguard this heritage are often insufficient owing to the great scale of the means required and the inadequacy of the economic, scientific and technical resources of the country in which the property to be protected is located,

Recalling the determination of the eight States of South East Asia to co-operate in the spheres of education, science and culture within the context of the South East Asian Ministers of Education Organization (SEAMEO), and the resolution of the 5th Conference of its Council, SEAMEC, in January 1973, approving the setting up of the Applied Research Centre for Archaeology and Fine Arts (ARCAFA), which is now under way,
Emphasising that the task of ARCAFA, whose aim is the full development of human potential, is to protect, conserve, enhance and develop in a harmonious manner the living cultural heritage of the past of the peoples of South East Asia,

Recommends to Unesco that it

support, with the help of the Member States of the region, the efforts of ARCAFA (Applied Research Centre for Archaeology and Fine Arts) and grant it intellectual and material assistance under its regular programme for carrying out the following projects:

1. Training:
   a) of specialists in cultural development;
   b) of technicians and specialists in archaeological excavation, in the conservation and restoration of monuments and cultural property, in museum science and in the organisation and presentation of historical sites;

2. Research:
   a) in laboratories and on sites concerning prehistoric archaeology, monuments and sites, museums and cultural property;
   b) in the fine arts;

3. Discussions and meetings of various kinds

4. Exchanges of specialists in:
   a) archaeology;
   b) the fine arts, etc.

5. Documentation and information:
   a) the collection, exchange, publicising and publication of material on archaeology and the fine arts;
   b) the establishment of relations between countries both inside and outside the region in all matters relating to the activities listed above."

"Recommendation No.30

The Conference,

Considering that industrialisation and urbanisation tend to change the environment, thereby affecting man's way of life and his ways of feeling and creating,

Being of the opinion that environmental development must form an integral part of cultural policies owing, on the one hand, to the ties existing between the safeguarding of the natural environment and the full development of the human personality; and, on the other hand, to the importance of architecture and town-planning in creating the background to the lives of human communities,
Being of the opinion that, to discharge the responsibility which is thus incumbent upon them, the architects of Asia should acquire the means of strengthening the links between town-planning and architectural construction by reference to a global conception of culture, taking as their starting point the realities of the Asian situation in particular,

Recalling further that the Asian countries possess a rich architectural heritage embodied in their ancient city centres and monuments,

Noting that their ancient cities have often retained the traditional patterns of settlements of artists and craftsmen,

Being aware of the experience of ancient and medieval Europe where, in the absence of positive efforts to protect the rich cultural heritage of the cities, irreparable loss and damage were caused by the processes of the Industrial Revolution,

I

Recommends to the Asian Member States that they:

take steps initially to list and draft legislation to protect their ancient cities and to ensure that any further development of such cities shall take place in conformity with town plans approved by the State;

II

Recommends to UNESCO that it:

1. assist the town-planners of such countries to meet in order to formulate a "Code of cultural ethics concerning ancient city centres in town and country planning" to help them to achieve optimum results with minimum experimentation;

2. help to set up a Pilot School of Architecture in Asia, along the lines of that recently set up at Dakar in Africa, to train architects qualified to seek out appropriate means of remedying the defacement and standardisation of the environment, so as to take account of the varied needs of human communities, and work out town-planning schemes which will be most conducive to the development of harmonious cultural life in Asia."

The International Council of Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) Seminar on the Conservation of Monuments in Earthquake Zones, held in Antigua, Guatemala, on 27-30 August 1974, adopted the undernoted recommendations:

Recommendations

1. The preparation of a guide to the emergency operations which must be effected on monuments which have suffered earthquake damage;

2. The establishment of a register, to be regularly kept up to date in each country, containing all experience and relevant data in connection with damage caused by earthquakes to historical monuments, and the creation of an international documentation centre which will compile and circulate such information, and of a restoration centre located in the town of Antiqua, Guatemala;

3. The promotion of studies on the materials and building methods adopted at the differing periods in the traditional cultures of each region;

4. The urgent establishment of closer relations between the government institutions and the technical institutions in charge of restoration, for the furtherance of the protection of the cultural heritage of the American continent;

5. Urgent measures for the implementation by interdisciplinary teams of specialised personnel of programmes of study, protection, consolidation, restoration and enhancement of cultural property;

6. The holding, by ICOMOS or similar institutions, of meetings attended by specialists belonging to the disciplines concerned with the study, protection, consolidation, restoration and enhancement of cultural property.

In closing, the Organising Committee was requested to '...circulate the above resolutions by the most suitable means on the national, regional and international levels...'
RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE UNESCO SYMPOSIUM ON BRONZE CULTURE IN EAST AND SOUTHEAST ASIA, BANGKOK, JULY 1976.

The Symposium on Bronze Culture in East and South East Asia was convened by UNESCO with the cooperation of the Thailand National Commission for UNESCO. Its purpose was to exchange results so far obtained in research on bronze culture in East and South East Asia; to review the present situation of archaeological and historical research on this and other subjects; and to advise UNESCO about the preparation of further research on these subjects. It was convinced in pursuance of Resolution 3.311 adopted by the General Conference of UNESCO at its Eighteenth Session in 1974, which authorised the Director-General to promote studies on Asian cultures, in particular the project on East Asian cultures and in relation to the project on Malay and South East Asian cultures.

The Symposium took place at the Darakarn Building in Bangkok from 5 to 9 July 1976. Part of the discussions were held in Ban Chiang during the visit there.

RECOMMENDATIONS

1. Training

The Symposium expressed its concern for the need for intensified training of archaeologists from South East Asian countries. The aim of the training should be to produce well-qualified professional archaeologists who are capable both of conducting research and of training their own students for the future. Therefore the following are proposed:

a) The establishment of a full training programme in archaeology within an existing institution of higher learning in South East Asia for students from all participating countries. Training in practical field methods could be conducted at ongoing excavations in any of the Member States. This point (a) should be considered as a top priority.

b) The establishment of an intensive six to eight-week field training course for professional South East Asian archaeologists at selected ongoing excavations in the region.

c) In conjunction with the implementation of points (a) and (b), a study should be conducted into the feasibility of expanding the training programme into a centre or an institute for South East Asian archaeology, able to grant M.A. degrees in archaeology and to function as a clearing house as proposed in item (e) in section II dealing with communication.

d) At the same time the Member States are encouraged to intensify undergraduate training in archaeology, especially in the countries that are currently under-staffed in archaeology.

II. Establishment of networks and communications

a) Seminars and/or workshops of experts in the field of archaeology should be held regularly in East and South East Asia on themes of common interest, utilising an interdisciplinary approach. The results should be published with assistance from UNESCO.

b) Member States should be encouraged to set up their own clearing unit, preferably within an already established institution, whose aim is to facilitate the flow of scientific information in the field of archaeology. UNESCO should explore the financial and technical possibilities of setting up a 'clearing house' for East and South East Asia in the near future.

c) In all the participating countries, archaeological site-surveys should be conducted and a standard format be prepared with the assistance from and the cooperation of UNESCO. In addition, a survey of research institutions, researchers and training facilities in the field of archaeology should be made.

d) An association of archaeologists for East and South East Asia should be established with CIPSH. It should be open to individual researchers and institutions from within the region and also from other parts of the world.

e) A feasibility study on setting up an institute of archaeology for East and South East Asia whose main functions would be research, training and acting as clearing house should be undertaken by UNESCO.

IV. Other Recommendations

a) UNESCO should continue to encourage participation in activities related to archaeology, in particular in the implementation of the above recommendations, of experts from all Member States in East and South East Asia.

The Regional Seminar on the Adaptation of Museums in Asia to the Needs of the Modern World was held in Tokyo and Kyoto from 22 to 27 March 1976. The meeting was convened by the Director-General of UNESCO with the cooperation of the Japanese National Commission for UNESCO, in implementation of Resolution 3.421 (a) of the General Conference of UNESCO, adopted at the Eighteenth Session.

The purpose of the meeting was to discuss at expert level major aspects of the adaptation of museums in Asia and Oceania to the needs of the modern world and to work out concrete recommendations concerning the needs of Member States from this geographical region.

RECOMMENDATIONS

a) Recommendations to UNESCO

Protection of Rural Culture (21)

UNESCO should arrange a meeting of experts to discuss the measures which could be adopted concerning protection of certain aspects of traditional rural and tribal culture which appear to be threatened by the process of industrialisation, urbanisation and other factors.

Strengthening the Programme of the Conservation Centre (26)

It is recommended that the Indian National Research Laboratory for Conservation of Cultural Properties and the Regional Training Centre at New Delhi should be further strengthened by (a) providing courses in museum architecture and exhibition techniques with special references to conservation; and (b) acting as a documentation centre in the fields of conservation, museum architecture and exhibition techniques.

Conference on Cultural Policies, Jogjakarta 1973 (27)

The Seminar supports the recommendations, as they apply to museums, of the Intergovernmental Conference on Cultural Policies in Asia held in Jogjakarta 10-19 December 1973.

b) Recommendations to Member States

Museum as a Part of National Planning (31)

It is strongly recommended that governments should pay more attention

to the setting-up, improvement and support of museums in the national development programme as vital contributing factors to the cultural, social, economic and educational progress of their countries.

Relations with Education and the Mass Media (34)

A close working relationship between museums and educational agencies, between museums and the mass media, is essential for the effective carrying-out of their role in the community.

Restitution of Cultural Property (35)

It is strongly recommended that Member States should take every possible initiative at an appropriate level to obtain return of important national treasures now held outside country of origin.

c) Recommendations to Museum Authorities

Extension of Museum Programmes and Services (38)

In order to attract the largest number of people from all sections of the community to museums, these institutions should be made as dynamic and flexible as possible with the help of T.V., radio, video and similar specialists. Facilities should also be provided where appropriate:

a) for the establishment of educational services;
b) for space to allow the involvement of scientific bodies and artist's and craftsmen's societies, and for the cooperation of such arts as theatre, cinema, music and dance;
c) for the creation of halls for lectures and conferences;
d) for frequent temporary exhibitions dealing with subjects of current interest;
e) for theatrical and musical events of an historical nature;
f) for the establishment of children's museums; and
g) for introducing more travelling exhibitions accommodated in museum buses in order to reach a large number of people living in the remote villages or other remote areas.

The Committee of Experts to Study the Question of the Restitution of Works of Art, meeting at the Unesco Office in Venice from 29 March to 2 April 1976, in implementation of Resolution 3.428 adopted by the General Conference of Unesco at its eighteenth session, reached agreement on the undernoted Principles and Means of Action:

PRIORITY MEASURES

1. The Committee of Experts considers it essential to create a worldwide climate of opinion which will encourage at all levels the restitution or return of works of art and other items of cultural property to their countries of origin. Although the creation of such a positive spirit of international solidarity is urgently needed, the Committee recognises that it can only be achieved gradually, by means of an international strategy which will have several inter-connected stages.

2. The Committee considers therefore that in the first instance the creation of a favourable current of public opinion is essential and consequently recommends to the Director General that he use all means available to him to attain this objective and in particular that he:

a) appeal to Member States to encourage the mass media and educational and cultural institutions to promote a wider awareness of this issue;

b) appeal to scholarly and professional associations concerned and more especially to non-governmental organisations, e.g. ICOM, to take account of the principles set out below.

3. In addition, the Committee recommends to the Director General that he launch an urgent appeal to all Member States to take all possible measures towards solving a problem which experience has shown could constitute a potential obstacle to international understanding. The purpose of this appeal will be to evoke a widespread response to the need for equitable arrangements enabling the return to their countries of origin of certain items of overriding importance for cultural and historical identity, for the personality and the spiritual values of particular peoples or groups of peoples.

4. Such arrangements are also required to enable certain countries which have been deprived of the cultural and ethnographic evidence of their history and cultural identity, to constitute small representative collections, where such do not exist.

Recommendations of Expert Committee on Restitution (cont.)

5. The Committee recommends to the Director General that he reinforce his appeal by specific efforts, in cases which are brought to his notice, in order to create a dialogue between Member States in view of the restitution or return of cultural property or to offer his good offices at the highest official level so as to facilitate the negotiation of bilateral agreements.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

6. The Committee considers that any action in regard to the restitution or return of cultural property should take account of the following principles:

7. As the testimony of the creative genius and the history of peoples, cultural property is a basic element of their identity and full enjoyment of this heritage is for each people an indispensable condition for its self-realisation.

8. The most tangible part of this heritage consists of objects which are the expression and testimony of human creativity of human creativity or of the evolution of nature and which, in the opinion of the competent bodies of each State, are of historical, artistic, scientific or technical value and interest, particularly items in the following categories:

   a) objects and documentation of ethnological interest;
   b) works of fine art and decorative art;
   c) archives and documents;
   d) paleontological and archaeological objects; and
   e) zoological, botanical and mineralogical specimens.

9. The loss of such objects as a consequence of foreign or colonial occupation or of illicit transfer, deprives the people concerned of elements essential for their cultural development, especially if the cultural property in question is made up of irreplaceable objects, which are of overriding significance for their identity.

10. The restitution or return of these objects to their countries of origin is a principle which should govern the action of Member States and to which they should give concrete form in a spirit of international solidarity and good faith.

11. The application of the principle of return should be determined in each specific case by means of bilateral negotiations but in no event shall the State which holds the cultural property in question be able to invoke any statutes of limitation.

12. The present legal status of an object should not be an obstacle to negotiations for its return.
Recommendations of Expert Committee on Restitution (cont.)

ADDITIONAL MEANS OF ACTION

13. Given the complexities of the issues involved and the likely variety of claims for restitution or return, the Committee recommends to the Director General that he consider the creation of a body for the purpose, the status of which should be defined by an international instrument.

14. Among the functions of this body, the Committee specifically recommends that it:

a) explore ways and means of facilitating bilateral negotiations for the restitution or return of cultural property and of encouraging the countries concerned to conclude agreements to this effect;

b) advise the Director General, when necessary, of further measures which may be required, both in general terms and for the solution of particular difficulties; and

c) facilitate directly or in liaison with non-governmental organisations, e.g. ICOM, access to information pertaining to the existence, whereabouts and problems of restitution or return of cultural property.

15. In the meantime, should difficulties arise in negotiating bilateral agreements, the Director General may appoint an expert to use his good offices to assist in reaching a settlement.

16. The Committee having considered ways of facilitating the processes of bilateral agreement between States, recommends in consequence that:

a) the terms of agreements be lodged with the Secretariat of Unesco to serve as examples for the information of other interested parties;

b) each State should take the initiative in identifying the cultural property which it might wish to retrieve;

c) recourse be had to national inventories of cultural property where they exist (such inventories were recommended in the 1970 Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property).

17. The Committee recommends to the Director General that he extend the support available through the normal processes of technical cooperation to both parties to a bilateral agreement for the restitution and return of cultural property (advice and assistance in preservation, packing, transport, display, etc.) as well as to strengthen the training of specialists already provided in Unesco's regional centres (Jos, Baghdad, Rome, Churubusco, New Delhi and Kyoto).
18. The Committee wishes to point out that the application of the Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property, should serve to minimise in the future the number of claims for restitution or return. States which are not yet parties to the Convention should, therefore, proceed as rapidly as possible with its ratification or acceptance. The Committee considers, in addition, that the conclusion of bilateral agreements for cooperation in this field constitutes a most effective means of action against illegal traffic in cultural property.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary Entry</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abhaya mudra</td>
<td>Gesture of reassurance. The right hand is held palm outward and the fingers extended upwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apsaras</td>
<td>Heavenly nymph offering sexual delight to the pious or heroic dead. Courtesan of Indra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ari</td>
<td>Former Burmese priesthood (Mahayana).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avadanas</td>
<td>Legends of the Buddha's life and acts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avolokitesvara</td>
<td>Bodhisattva of Mercy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avatar</td>
<td>Incarnation. Usually applied to one of the incarnations of Vishnu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baray</td>
<td>Reservoir, tank or lake.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhi Tree</td>
<td>Tree under which the Buddha gained enlightenment at Bodhgaya. The original tree was cut down in 600 A.D. but trees survive which are said to have been grown from cutting from the original tree throughout Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bodhisattva</td>
<td>A being who, although capable of attaining Buddhahood through enlightenment, renounces this in favour of acting as a ministering angel to a world in need of help. A Buddha before Enlightenment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bot</td>
<td>Thai temple or shrine (known also as Ubosot).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahma</td>
<td>The absolute creator of all things. Principal figure in the Hindu trinity with Vishnu and Shiva.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmanism</td>
<td>Form of Hinduism based on the concept of a pre-eminent and sacred caste (the Brahmanas). A spiritual elite by birth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmanas</td>
<td>Ritual texts of early Hinduism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brahmin</td>
<td>Hindu princely caste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddha</td>
<td>The 'awoken one' or 'enlightened one'. The founder of Buddhism (d.489 B.C.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cakra</td>
<td>The wheel, emblem of the sun and the dominion of the Buddha's law.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cetiya</td>
<td>Indonesian temple (known also as Chundi and Tjandi).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chaitya</td>
<td>Burmese Buddhist sanctuary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chhattra</td>
<td>Umbrella, emblem of dominion and the heavens, surmounting Buddhist stupa or pagoda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chattravali</td>
<td>Triple umbrella.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chuman</td>
<td>Lime plaster or stucco.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmachakra</td>
<td>The 'Wheel of Law'. Emblem of Buddhist law or Dharma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dharmachakra mudra</td>
<td>Gesture of teaching or turning the Wheel of Law. The right hand is held before the chest with the tips of the thumb and index finger joined to touch one of the fingers of the left hand, which is turned palm inwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dhyana mudra</td>
<td>Gesture or pose of meditation. The hands rest in the lap, the right above the left with the fingers extended.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durga</td>
<td>Shiva's consort.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garuda</td>
<td>Mythical sunbird. The emblem and vehicle of Vishnu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hamsa</td>
<td>Goose. The emblem of Brahma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harmika</td>
<td>Pavilion. Railed parapet surmounting dome of Buddhist stupa or pagoda.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hinayana : Small Vehicle. Early or primitive form of Buddhism emphasising doctrine rather than the worship of the Buddha. Based on the original Pali texts.

Ilti : Finial on Burmese pagoda.

Jatakas : 'Birth Stories'. Tales of the Buddha in his previous incarnations as animals and men. The principal source of inspiration for the ornamentation of Buddhist structures.

Kailasa : Shiva's heaven.

Kala : 'Monster of Time'. Usually portrayed as a gaping-mouthed creature. Widely used as motif decorating door and windowheads in Indonesia. See also Kirtimukhta.

Kalan : Chen temple (Vietnamese).

Kirtimukhta : 'Face of Fame' or 'Face of Glory'. Grotesque mask similar to Kala.

Kraton : Indonesian palace or fortified village.

Krishna : Incarnation of Vishnu, Hero of the Mahabharata.

Kuan- : Chinese God of War.

Lakshmi : Goddess of fortune. Wife of Vishnu.

Laterite : Ferruginous rock.

Ma-cho-Po : Mother of Heavenly Sages (Chinese).

Mahabharata : Sanskrit Hindu epic, c.600-200 B.C.

Mahayana : Great Vehicle. Later theistic form of Buddhism emphasising divinity of Buddha and Bodhisattvas. Based on Sanskrit texts.

Mandala : Magic diagram of Buddhist hierarchy or cosmos.

Meru : 'The Cosmic Mountain of the Gods'. Known also as Mahameru in Indonesia. Temple mountains, the physical representation of Mount Meru are normally divided into three sections: Kamadhatu (where man is still shackled by greed); Rupa-dhatu (where man has eliminated desire but it still tied to the phenomenal world); and Arupa-dhatu (where man, having achieved Enlightenment, is freed from earthly desires).

Mudra : Mystic ritual gesture signifying various actions or powers.

Naga : Mythical serpent (snake) god. Symbol of water.

Nandi : Shiva's bull.

Nat : Burmese nature spirit.

Nirvana : Death of the Buddha. Blissful state of release from worldly suffering, desire and reincarnation (the ultimate Buddhist goal).

Pao Sheng Ta-Ti : His Majesty the Protector of Life (Chinese).

Pendopo : Open sided pavilion.

Pipal : Sacred fig tree (Ficus religiosa).

Prang : Siamese form of stupa with rectangular or polygonal base.

Puranas : Eighteen sacred Hindu books of mythology and epic tales including the Mahabharata and the Ramayana.

Rama : Hero of the Ramayana.

Ramayana : Sanskrit Hindu epic, c.400-200 B.C.

Shiva : Third member of the Hindu Trinity (with Brahma and Vishnu), who is both creator and destroyer.

Stupa : Buddhist mound or dome, containing Buddhist relics or associated with Buddha.
Glossary (cont.)

Sutras : Sacred Hindu texts.
Tantric : Primitive form of Buddhism emphasising personalities as symbols of religious thought.
Theravada : Hinayana Buddhism.
Urna : Whorl of hair on the brow of the Buddha.
Ushnisha : Protuberance of the head of the Buddha, symbol of his extra-mortal knowledge and consciousness.
Vajrayana : Tantric Buddhism. Cult focussed on Vajra, symbol of truth manifested as a diamond, thunderbolt or phallus. Destructive and indestructible.
Vihara : Buddhist monastery.
Vishnu : The Preserver (second member of the Hindu trinity with Brahma and Shiva).
Wat : Thai temple or shrine (also known as Vat).
Wayang : Indonesian puppet theatre.
Yasti : Mast or pole of Buddhist stupa.
### Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AATA</td>
<td>Art and Archaeology Technical Abstracts, Institute of Fine Arts, New York University, USA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASPAC</td>
<td>Cultural and Social Centre for the Asian and Pacific Region, Seoul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBHC</td>
<td>Bulletin of the Burma Historical Commission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFEEO</td>
<td>Ecole Francaise d’Extrême-Orient, Hanoi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IASC</td>
<td>Indian Association for the Study of Conservation, New Delhi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICCROM</td>
<td>International Centre for Conservation, Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICOM/ASIA</td>
<td>International Council of Museums, Regional Agency in Asia, New Delhi and Bangkok.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRASMB</td>
<td>Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society (Malaysian Branch), Kuala Lumpur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEAMEO</td>
<td>South East Asian Ministers of Education Organisation, Bangkok.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEAMES</td>
<td>South East Asian Ministers of Education Secretariat, Bangkok.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAFA</td>
<td>SEAMEO Project in Archaeology and Fine Arts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MONSOON ASIAN SETTING


Bibliography (cont.)


COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS


Bibliography (cont.)


Bibliography (cont.)

NATIONAL PROFILES

Union of Burma


ANON. 'Mandalay and Environs', Ministry of Union Culture, Rangoon, 1956.


GHOOSH, A. 'Laws relating to Monuments, Sites and Other Objects', in 'Indian Archaeology', ASI, New Delhi, 1960.


YULE, SIR H. 'Embassy to the Court of Ava', London, 1858.
Bibliography (cont.)

Republic of Indonesia

ANON. 'Save Cultural Heritage on Dieng Plateau', in The Indonesian Times, Jakarta, 9 September 1974, p.2.


GROSLIER, B.P. 'The Ancient Civilisation of Indonesia', Barrie and Jenkins, 1966.


Bibliography (cont.)


Democratic Kampuchea


COEDES, G. 'The Indianised States of Southeast Asia', East-West Centre Press, Honolulu, 1968.


GILLMAN D'ARCY, P.J. (TRANS.): 'Notes on the Customs of Cambodia' (by Chou Ta-kuan), Social Science Association Press, Bangkok, 1967.


Bibliography (cont.)


People's Democratic Republic of Laos


ANON. 'Report on archaeological sites and monuments in the Kingdom of Laos', in Proceedings of SEAMEO Conference, Phnom Penh, 4-8 December 1972, pp.319-340.


Federation of Malaysia


ANON. 'Malayan Forts', Museums Department, Federation of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, 1961.


CLODD, H.P. 'Malaya's First British Pioneer : Francis Light', 1948.


Republic of the Philippines


Republic of Singapore


Bibliography (cont.)

MAKEPEACE, BROOK AND BRADDELL (EDITORS). 'One Hundred Years of Singapore' (2 Volumes), Singapore, 1921.


SONG, O.S. 'One Hundred Years of the Chinese in Singapore', Singapore, 1923.


Thailand


ANON. 'Broken-down Bangkok', in Newsweek, 1 December 1975, pp.24-25.

ANON. 'Bronze Disease and its Treatment', Department of Fine Arts, National Museum, Bangkok, 1975.


BHURASI, S. 'An Appreciation of Sukhothai Art', Thai Culture (New Series), No.17, Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok, 1971.
Bibliography (cont.)

BHIRASRI, S. 'Thai Buddhist Art: Architecture', Thai Culture (New Series), No.4, Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok, 1971.

BHIRASRI, S. 'Thai Wood Carvings', Thai Culture (New Series), No.12, Department of Fine Arts, Bangkok, 1971.


Bibliography (cont.)

Socialist Republic of Vietnam


CRAWFORD. 'Customs and Culture of Vietnam', Tuttle and Company, Tokyo.


